THE

WESTMINSTER READERS

SECOND SERIES BOOK THREE

TREASURES OF LITERATURE

COMPILED BY J. H. JAGGER, M.A., D. LITT.

WESLEY TRAINING COLLEGE
ROYAPETTAH, MADRAS

TEACHER'S BOOK

UNIVERSITY OF LONDON PRESS LTD

THE WESTMINSTER READERS

SECOND SERIES BOOK THREE

TEACHER'S BOOK

TREASURES OF LITERATURE

THE

WESTMINSTER READERS

By Ernest J. Kenny and
J. H. Jagger, M.A., D.Litt.

FIRST SERIES

Book I. DAYS IN STORYLAND
Compiled by Ernest J. Kenny
Limp Cloth, 1/4 ; Cloth Boards, 1/6

Book II. A GARLAND OF LEGENDS
Compiled by Ernest J. Kenny
Limp Cloth, 1/5 ; Cloth Boards, 1/7

Book III. GOLDEN TALES
Compiled by Ernest J. Kenny
Limp Cloth, 1/8 ; Cloth Boards, 1/10

Book IV. REALMS OF ADVENTURE
Compiled by J. H. Jagger, M.A., D.LITT.
Limp Cloth, 1/10 ; Cloth Boards, 2/-

Teacher's Books. Cloth Boards,
Books I and II, each 2/3
Book III, 2/6 ; Book IV, 2/9

SECOND SERIES

Book I. JOYOUS HOURS
Compiled by J. H. Jagger, M.A., D.LITT.
Limp Cloth, 2/- ; Cloth Boards, 2/2

Book II. THE CHARM OF BOOKS
Compiled by J. H. Jagger, M.A., D.LITT.
Limp Cloth, 2/2 ; Cloth Boards, 2/4

Book III. TREASURES OF LITERATURE
Compiled by J. H. Jagger, M.A., D.LITT.
Limp Cloth, 2/4 ; Cloth Boards, 2/6

Teacher's Books. Cloth Boards
Books I, II, and III

Each book is profusely illustrated

UNIVERSITY OF LONDON PRESS, Ltd.
10 & 11 WARWICK LANE, LONDON, E.C.4

THE WESTMINSTER READERS

TREASURES OF LITERATURE

Compiled by

J. H. JAGGER, M.A., D.Litt.

Author of "A Book of English Poems" "Modern English," etc.

SECOND SERIES BOOK THREE

TEACHER'S BOOK

WITH THIRTY-THREE ILLUSTRATIONS IN BLACK AND WHITE AND FOUR PLATES IN COLOUR BY RICHARD B. OGLE

MESTON TRAINING COLLEGE 1933 MADRAS 14

UNIVERSITY OF LONDON PRESS, LTD.

MESTON TRAINING COLLEGE
1002
800
MADRAS-14

Printed in Great Britain for the UNIVERSITY OF LONDON PRESS, LTD.,
by HAZELL, WATSON AND VINEY, LTD., London and Aylesbury.

PREFACE

THE series of teacher's books accompanying the Westminster Readers is designed to afford, in a compact and readily accessible form, the material that the teacher needs during the actual reading lesson. Such material is of several sorts : the text of the pupil's book, comments on the extracts in that book, exercises, and reflections upon the teaching of reading in its various aspects.

Particular attention is drawn to the article with which the book commences. Without pretending either to be an original treatise on the subject of reading, or to give an account that is in any sense complete, this article brings forward a number of theoretical and a number of practical topics which demand the consideration of every teacher who undertakes to teach reading to pupils between eleven and fourteen years of age. It can be conveniently read in conjunction with the similar article prefixed to each of the first four volumes of the series ; as the problems which confront the teacher are partly the same, the two articles to some extent cover similar ground, prominence being given here to points that are of major importance in dealing with pupils in the Senior school, while matters that are peculiar to work with Junior classes have been lightly passed over.

Of a more immediately practical nature are the notes on the extracts in the pupil's book, which have been kept as brief as is compatible with giving the kind and amount of

information that the teacher would require for classroom use. Being intended to save his time and trouble, they are mainly biographical, but there is a number of annotations of allusions and words, as isolated difficulties often occur in a passage simple as a whole.

In addition, it has been thought proper to provide a classified index of the exercises in each of the pupil's books, and to make some suggestions relative to work appropriate at each stage.

CONTENTS

PAGE

Reading ix

Westminster Readers, Second Series, Pupil's Book III 1

Notes on the Extracts in the Pupil's Book 273

Index of the Exercises in the Pupil's Book . 297

READING

I. Reading is Interpretation. II. Advance in Skill. III. An Adequate Motive is Necessary. IV. The Uses of Reading.

A. Reading as Speech

V. Enunciation. VI. Pronunciation. VII. Accent and Pitch. VIII. Expression. IX. Phrasing. X. The Reading of Poetry.

B. Reading as Thinking

XI. Oral and Silent Reading. XII. Silent Reading. XIII. The Meanings of Unfamiliar Words.

C. Reading as the Study of Literature

XIV. Literature. XV. Textbooks. XVI. Literary Readers.

Exercises

XVII. Content Exercises. XVIII. Imaginative Exercises. XIX. Language Exercises. XX. Grammatical Exercises. XXI. Oral and Written Work.

I. READING IS INTERPRETATION

Primarily, reading is a process of thought; in ordinary life to read is to interpret printed or written words and sentences. But in school reading has so many aspects and side-issues that the ordinary meaning of the word and the principal value of the process may be forgotten. Since the

purpose of reading in later life is to obtain the writer's ideas, the line of the teacher's action is clearly indicated. His main aim should be to teach the pupil to read in the full and proper sense, and all subordinate issues, such as correct pronunciation, clear enunciation, and graceful expression, however important in themselves, should be kept in proper relation to the main aim.

II. ADVANCE IN SKILL

Although the average boy and girl of eleven are still learning to read, they are already far advanced in the art, and it is worth while to consider briefly the nature of their action.

They read in larger wholes than words, taking in at each glance groups which may be so large as to contain three or four words. If they do not do that they cannot read with sufficient rapidity, nor can they understand properly the meaning of what they are reading.

The experienced reader's brain perceives only a fraction of what meets his eye; he neglects the rest, using his knowledge of the trend of the meaning to guide him in what he is looking for. He does not visualize and decipher each letter and word in every sentence that he reads. To be able to read in this manner he must have become intimately familiar with the visual appearance of each word; his developed efficiency depends upon his having acquired the power to decipher each letter of each word, if he wishes. Only in this way has he been able to make for himself a

mental picture of its salient features, by which to recognize it while ignoring all the remaining details.

The experienced reader uses the beginnings of words, and neglects the ends. He sees the letters which project above the line and below the line, and does not see (except at the beginnings of words) letters that do not project. He mechanically notices differences of word-length. Thus the general form initiates the process of recognition, and then, if his experience has been long enough and wide enough, the general meaning guides him to the right word or set of words. If the general meaning escapes him for a moment, he will unconsciously pause to examine the details of the type.

An excellent instance of the influence of habit is found in the fact that the upper halves of letters are seen more clearly than the lower halves. That is due to the fact that the book is held below the level of the eye. As this practice is universal, all readers use the upper halves more than the lower. But each person's reading habits contain many features peculiar to himself, depending upon his personal character and ability, upon the course that his education has followed, and upon accident.

That readers read in larger groups than words has been shown by examining the movements of the eyes. These organs do not travel steadily along the line, but in a series of jerks, each movement being followed by a pause. It has been found that they see only during the pauses, and are almost or entirely blind while advancing; and that the average number of letters passed during each movement is

nearly twice as great as the number of letters that the eye can perceive when it is at rest, and is also greater than the average number of letters in a word. In fact, we have to realize, in connection with what was said above about the slight indications used in word-perception, that nearly half the letters are totally invisible to us while we are reading.

It is extremely important that good reading habits should have been formed early, and that they shall be maintained, because upon the excellence or otherwise of these habits will depend the efficiency of the reader in time to come. Habits which interfere with comprehension, such as incessant attention to elocution in oral reading, must be avoided. It has been found that slow readers do not remember as much as those who read faster, and, therefore, any practices which make for slow, silent reading should be avoided likewise. But it does not follow that the rate of silent reading can be indefinitely increased, or that all pupils are capable of reading with equal rapidity. They vary greatly; there are naturally slow readers and naturally rapid readers, and the most rapid readers are those who are most efficient in all respects—they are best mechanically, they comprehend most, and they remember most accurately and completely. Every reader has his own rate of maximum efficiency, and he will lose if he is restricted below this rate, or forced above it. In general, pupils read (silently, that is) below their rates of maximum efficiency, and the teacher should endeavour to bring them up to these rates.

III. AN ADEQUATE MOTIVE IS NECESSARY

Little children who are learning to read by natural methods generally display a strong desire to read, because they feel pleasure in the exercise of their new power as well as curiosity to know what the text holds. The former motive fades in course of time, but if the reading matter that is provided is interesting and suitable the latter motive persists.

It is of obvious importance that this motive should not be destroyed, and there is no little danger of it being destroyed, for children in school are made to read in order that they may learn to read. They practise reading in order to be able to read better. For this reason, and because they act more or less under compulsion, it has often been forgotten that they cannot dispense with the direct natural motive for reading. They need an adequate motive quite as much as adults need one. They should never read, orally or silently, for the mere sake of reading, as a formal exercise.

IV. THE USES OF READING

The school, while exercising and perfecting children in the art of interpreting written language, has to attend to several side-issues, which, although they are all subsidiary, are yet quite distinct, so that one or other of them is constantly in the teacher's mind. Reading, inevitably, has effects upon the reader, and the school is obliged to take note of these effects.

(*a*) Although the pupils' natural motive for reading is desire to know what the text can communicate to them, they have to learn how to get and retain this information. They should be given exercises which will teach them to follow proper methods of doing so, such as exercises leading to the tabulation of scattered facts, and problems involving deductions from facts supplied by the reading-matter.

(*b*) Skill in written expression and the powers of speech are enhanced by reading, and this is true of silent reading as well as of oral reading. A large part of the English vocabulary consists of words rarely used outside books, and the forms of written phrases and sentences are more careful, coherent, and elaborate than anything heard in speech. Written English is continually influencing spoken English, especially by expanding and enriching its vocabulary. Without our books and habits of reading and writing, our spoken vocabulary would soon be greatly impoverished, and our style of expression in speech would become loose and inexact. Above all, since by reading the sentence-capacity of the pupil is developed, the reading books should consist of extracts which are patterns worthy of imitation.

(*c*) The final and highest value of reading is that it is the proper introduction to literature. A taste for good literature has to be fostered in the pupils while they are learning to read. This aspect of reading is so important that it largely determines the contents of the reading books, the types of exercises set, and the teacher's methods of conducting the reading lessons. It will be convenient, therefore, to devote separate consideration to Reading as Speech, Reading as

Thinking (p. xxii), and Reading as the Introduction to Literature (p. xxix).

A. READING AS SPEECH

Spoken language, in all its features, mode of utterance as well as vocabulary, is principally learnt by imitation, and in oral reading the teacher cannot afford to neglect the chief means by which speech is acquired. He should make a practice of reading passages aloud to his class, and should be careful to present to them a good model. Preparation is necessary if he is to read to them in a properly appreciative manner. Similarly, the oral reading of the pupils, in all classes, should be preceded by silent preparation. They should read aloud the pieces that they know best. Verse should be read aloud as well as prose; especially, the pupils should read aloud to the teacher poems which they have learnt by heart.

During oral reading by the pupils the teacher should form part of the audience, sometimes at any rate. Otherwise, if he always follows in the book, he will not be an effective critic. If a teacher who has made a practice of following in his own book will dispense with it, he will be surprised at the different impression that each pupil's reading will make upon him. He will find that to no small extent he derived from visual recognition what he thought he had heard, and that, besides the pupils' enunciation being less clear than he imagined and their pronunciation less correct, the modulation of their voices is less consistent with the meaning.

The qualities that are to be cultivated in the reader are : 1, Clearness of utterance; 2, Purity of sounds; 3, Appropriate expression. They are to be aimed at in school as much as in the theatre and the public hall, and are the same for the youngest reader and the most finished elocutionist.

V. ENUNCIATION

Clearness of utterance is the chief of these qualities, even more desirable than correct pronunciation. It is partly a natural gift, but it can be improved by practice. A thick speech can be clarified, an inaudible pupil can be made to speak louder, one who tries to read with his mouth half shut can be persuaded to open it.

Clearness is promoted by purity of sound. If the vowels and consonants are made to conform to their types, the resulting speech, besides being more correct in sound, will be more distinct. Actual speech defects, of course, need special remedial treatment.

VI. PRONUNCIATION

Correct pronunciation is the employment of the sounds of Standard English. Here a difficulty arises. Among educated speakers in different parts of England, not to say Scotland, and Ireland, and America, and Australia, there are differences of sound which are quite considerable. The degree of variation which exists even in the pronunciation of educated people in the south of England can be seen very well in Professor Daniel Jones's *English Pronouncing*

Dictionary; he gives, for example, two pronunciations of *year*, two of *room*, four of *poor*, four of *often*, and five of *sure*. Further, if one uniform standard could be established, personal differences would remain which could never be obliterated by the efforts of teachers, even if it were desirable to obliterate them.

Nevertheless, standard speech, as each teacher understands it, should be cultivated, for Standard English is an ideal of great practical value. The more nearly it is approached, the better will all speakers of English be able to understand each other's speech ; the further it is departed from, the more local will each man's speech become. Naturally, the most marked aberrations should be the chief objects of the teacher's attack.

Mistakes in speech cannot be eradicated if they are corrected in an unsystematic way, merely as they occur. The differences between the pupils' pronunciation and accepted English should be tabulated and classified by the teacher, if he is to have any hope of dealing with them successfully, because some are readily curable, while others are much more obstinate. It is easy to correct an error which consists in adding or omitting a sound that the pupil makes accurately in other words, or in substituting for such a sound another sound; for example, a pupil can be made to alter "somethin*k*," because he is accustomed to make the proper mouth adjustments for the right sound, and can hear the difference between the two sounds. But there are other sounds which need ear training, and a new mouth adjustment. The pupil makes a wrong sound, and imagines

he is making the right sound; he cannot, without practice, hear exactly how the two sounds differ. For example, many school children do not make, and have never made, the contact between the tongue and the palate which is needed if the normal *l* sound in "only" is to be produced; they say "on'y." Such children have to learn how to make a medial *l* sound; without such instruction they cannot imitate the teacher if he pronounces "only," "always," etc., as they should be spoken. They are unacquainted with the correct adjustment of the mouth, and they cannot hear the difference between what they say and what he says in uttering such word. These two classes of speech-error need, then, to be distinguished and treated separately.

Nor can the rough-and-ready method of relying upon an uninstructed ear to tell him what errors his pupils are making, and upon his natural ingenuity to direct him in instructing them about their speech, suffice to the teacher. This method has been tried, and it is a common observation that it has had little effect. Really, that was all that could be expected. Without definite knowledge of speech the teacher cannot hear the errors, nor does he know how they are produced, and how the correct sounds can be produced. For those who set out to correct bad pronunciation and poor enunciation, there is no substitute for phonetic knowledge. It need not be exhaustive, but it is indispensable. Upon this subject, reference should be made to one of the numerous excellent textbooks. The following is a short list of such books:

W. Rippmann, *The Sounds of Spoken English.*

I. C. Ward, *The Phonetics of English.*

(These two books deal with the theory of the subject.)

B. P. Macdonald, *English Speech To-day.*

(This book combines practice with theory, and contains a useful appendix consisting of lists of words for practice.)

E. Fogerty, *Speech Craft.*

(This is an elocutionist's book, and is of a wholly practical nature.)

VII. ACCENT AND PITCH

There are two other features of pronunciation which carry us close to the third department of speech—appropriate expression. These are *accent* and *musical pitch.* They are both qualities of syllables, but as they give little trouble to the teacher they can be dismissed with a bare reference. It should be realized, however, that the English language has a strong accent, and that, as a consequence, the vowels of accented syllables tend to be pronounced clearly, while all unaccented vowels are naturally slurred. The teacher should not expect all syllables to be pronounced with equal distinctness. In a similar manner monosyllabic words vary in pronunciation according as they carry the sentence accent or not : for instance, there are two standard pronunciations of *that* and *have.*

VIII. EXPRESSION

To read with correct expression is to give the right values to all that is uttered. Expression, therefore, is a word of

very complex meaning, including the speed of utterance, the management of pauses, rhythm, and the degree of emphasis that ought to be given to each word, as well as the more elementary qualities of correct pronunciation and clearness. As a whole, it cannot be deliberately taught; but the pupils will imitate, and to some extent acquire, the teacher's modes of expression, if he reads aloud to them.

Appropriate expression is valuable because its presence is the evidence that the reader has understood what he is reading aloud, and because, without it, what he is reading aloud cannot be understood by others. If the pupil has realized the meaning of what he reads, he will be likely to give it a correct expression. The teacher should be careful, therefore, not to think of expression as something separate to be learnt and practised by artificial rules. Artificial rules lead to artificial expression, to affectation and exaggerated emphasis; and artificial expression is worse than lack of expression.

IX. PHRASING

Attention should be paid to phrasing, which is grouping together words that have a specially close connection with one another. It is worth while to insert marks in a passage to show the pupils what is meant by good phrasing, since so much of the effect of reading aloud depends upon it. The actual phrasing that is given to a passage depends partly upon the meaning, and partly on the need to pause for breath, which varies from reader to reader.

The pupils should not be allowed to suppose that their

pauses are to be mechanically regulated. The primary purpose of punctuation, in modern English at any rate, is to make the meaning clearer. Stops are used for logical reasons. They do not take account of breathing pauses, since they are needed for silent reading quite as much as for reading aloud. The pupil can only phrase effectively after he has realized the meaning. It is therefore unwise for the teacher to tell his class that they should pause at a stop, because that places what should be a natural and spontaneous effect in the position of a guiding principle to be consciously followed. It may also produce the notion that the voice should not pause except at a stop, which is incorrect.

X. THE READING OF POETRY

The oral reading of poetry is a difficult task, requiring much practice; and children cannot be expected to perform it well. A poem is a mental experience, consisting of a series of images accompanied by intense feeling, and the words of the poem are the instruments by which this experience, or one similar to it, is rekindled in the mind of the reader or hearer. A poem, therefore, should be read aloud in such a way as to arouse the effect which the poet intended, and it cannot do that unless the means which he adopted, namely, the rhythm, rhymes, vowel and consonant music, and so forth, are perceived by the hearer and reader. Careful preparation is needed, as well as a knowledge of the technical qualities of the piece, and a realization of its meaning and spirit.

It is best to require from children only the minimum,

which is that the rhythm and rhymes shall be heard. There are three errors to be avoided.

The first is over-emphasis of the metre, which is called "sing-song." This is the natural tendency of children.

The second is exaggerated gesture. This also is an error of the schools, but of the teachers rather than of the pupils, who are led into it by their teachers. Lyric poetry should be read in a restrained manner, with little or no gesture. The reading of drama, whether in prose or verse, is of course quite different; there gesture is allowable and proper.

The third error is to read poetry as if it were prose, and to ignore the technical qualities of the verse. This leads to the metre being masked, and to the reader running on from one line to the next without a pause, where the logical meaning does not require one. Poetry, whether rhymed or unrhymed, should be read with a slight pause at the end of each line.

But, when all is said, it must be confessed that the teacher who has taught his pupils to read poetry well has accomplished a remarkable feat.

B. READING AS THINKING

XI. ORAL AND SILENT READING

At first the pupil has to pronounce his words and sentences aloud as he reads. To that succeeds a time when, though he can read silently, he can—because he has learnt to speak before beginning to read—pronounce words more quickly than he can recognize them on the page and inter-

pret them. His rate of oral reading and his rate of silent reading are both increasing, but the latter is gaining on the former. Throughout this period oral reading is legitimately the main method of the school. Ultimately a moment is reached when the rate of silent reading overtakes the oral, so that the pupil reads faster and grasps the meaning better when he is reading silently than when he is reading aloud. From this moment oral reading loses its place, and the two kinds diverge from one another, acquire different purposes, and should be treated accordingly.

When the rate at which the pupil can read silently outstrips the rate at which he can read aloud, silent reading becomes the basic method, and oral reading changes in function. Then it becomes a department of speech-training: it has a value of its own, but that value is less than the value of silent reading, since in adult life the latter is the method principally used by nearly all people. Till then, besides being an exercise in elocution, it is a means of improving the power to read silently, and also furnishes evidence of the degree of skill attained.

Oral reading at this age is quite different from the earliest beginnings, which were a necessary preliminary to reading silently. It depends upon the power to read silently; for, before the pupil can read aloud with appropriate expression, he must have understood the meaning; and to do that he must be able to let his eye run on ahead, so that he may gather the sense in anticipation. A knowledge of the subject-matter will cause the reader to think of the meaning of what he is reading rather than of his manner of performance,

and his voice will give a more natural rendering than if he is concentrating solely on how to read the passage aloud. Reading aloud is not easy; all children need intelligent instruction and criticism in this department of their work, as well as practice in it.

Silent reading has recently been emphasized because in an earlier period nearly all reading in the Elementary School was oral. So exclusively was oral reading practised that it came to be considered of no moment, provided the appropriate sounds were made, whether the mind of the reader penetrated to the meaning or whether it did not. Now the pendulum is at the opposite end of its swing. It has even been urged that, since silent reading is of the first importance in life, oral reading should be abandoned altogether, at any rate in the senior school. That is going too far.

It should be presumed that by the age of eleven the average pupil has learned to read; his reading habits, both oral and silent, are now formed, just as the main lines of his speech are fixed by the age of seven. But oral reading should continue, though the occasions become rarer, right to the end of the school course. To be able to read aloud with some degree of distinction and grace is a branch of education which everyone should cultivate, and which of late years has been unduly neglected. Apart from that, it continues to be the elocutionary exercise which we have already termed it. It continues to clarify the pupil's speech, and to give him practice in the use of words and sentence-forms which he would not otherwise employ in his

oral utterances. And, as always, it is of assistance in realizing the meaning of a difficult passage to read it aloud after it has been studied silently.

Although oral reading should be the main method until the pupil's familiarity with print has become so complete that he can recognize words and interpret them faster than he can utter them, silent reading should be begun as early as possible, and the amount of oral practice should not be so relatively great that it interferes with progress in silent reading. Till he can read silently faster than he can read aloud, the pupil should not meet in his reading with words whose meaning he does not understand. Afterwards he will encounter unknown words in his silent reading; indeed, that will be one of the principal ways in which his vocabulary will increase in size. Till then all the pupils in the class should have their books open before them; for the oral reading, being as yet the faster of the two, will increase the speed of those who are reading silently. Afterwards all oral reading to the class by pupils should be as to an audience, and those not reading should shut their books, and backward pupils should read to the teacher alone. In the early stage any who are found to read ahead silently during the oral reading lesson should be given other work to do at that time.

XII. SILENT READING

While the purpose of silent reading is to gain information, the purpose of oral reading is to impart information to others.

In this respect oral reading is like writing, but silent reading resembles listening in function. Although correct expression is an indication that the reader has understood the text, broadly speaking, skill in oral reading is evidence of the ability to recognize words, and skill in silent reading is evidence of power to interpret and remember.

The two are in many ways hostile to one another. An habitual silent reader, if unaccustomed to oral reading, speaks so fast when he reads aloud that he becomes indistinct and stumbles; and unless he has had training, he will fail to give proper expression to his sentences. Conversely (as has already been pointed out), oral reading, practised too much, makes for slow silent reading, and so interferes with comprehension.

Apart from the necessities of seeing and following the text, silent reading is a process of thought. That being so, the more closely it resembles the ordinary thinking process, the better it is. Articulation should be suppressed, and its speed should be that of thought, which, for a fixed efficiency, is best when it is swiftest. It differs from ordinary thought in that it is not freely directed by the mind, but follows a course imposed from without. It is a thought process in which the mind is able to think the thoughts of maturer and more powerful minds. Therein lie both the glory and the danger of reading. It is because the reader's mind can and does for the time share in those thoughts, and can therefore grow in the direction of those minds, that reading is so mind-formative, and is a means of intellectual development which the whole modern civilized world utilizes as an educational

instrument, and as a means of transmitting tradition and culture. On the other hand, if the reader resigns his power of mental self-direction, and comes to rely upon books to do his thinking and imagining for him, instead of using them as working tools and as a wholesome stimulus, they will sap his originality and force. Then they become a substitute for thought, whereas they should be its ally.

After the age of eleven, or thereabouts, silent reading should be developed in every way. Besides reading for enjoyment, the pupils should learn to study both the subject-matter and the language.

XIII. THE MEANINGS OF UNFAMILIAR WORDS

Literature and language may be looked at from opposite ends. A book is composed of chapters, which are composed of paragraphs; these contain sentences, which in their turn can be separated into words. Conversely, words are combined into sentences, which form paragraphs, and so on. The first, the wider, more comprehensive view, has the disadvantage of being the more indefinite. The second, beginning with the word, is more precise, and, being more precise, it is the one most used in school. But it has the disadvantage that, strictly speaking, a word has no meaning except in a sentence, and that the meaning varies with the sentence. Similarly, though to a less degree, a sentence derives its significance, in part, from the context in which it occurs.

In a given lesson there generally occur a number of words

whose meanings are unknown to the pupils, or difficult to grasp. When is the proper time to explain these—before, during, or after the reading? It is best to wait until the first reading is finished, and then to elucidate the meanings of the hard words. There will then be fewer that need explanation than if the attempt is made before the reading commences; for many words that seem unknown to the pupil if put to him isolated from the context will be found familiar to him when in their context. Moreover, the deeper meaning resides in the whole, not in the part; and it is impossible to convey the deeper meaning if the word is isolated. This is the natural way of learning the meaning; it is the way in which all of us learn the meanings of words that we hear spoken, and its effect is lasting, while many repetitions are necessary if the method of explaining isolated words is adopted.

For the same reasons the dictionary should not be used before the lesson commences. There may, however, be occasional separate dictionary lessons, with lists of hard words.

It is a mistake to follow too rigid a rule in this matter, for there are exceptional cases. A preliminary explanation of the general meaning of an extract is often necessary. If a context is unusually difficult, or remote from the pupil's experience, it will not operate to clarify the meaning of the most difficult words. Only so far as it is known can it give a meaning to what is unknown or enrich the meaning of what is imperfectly known. Sometimes, too, the unknown word is a key-word upon which the meaning of the whole

paragraph entirely depends. Here—as, indeed, always—the teacher must judge for himself which is the best procedure to adopt.

C. READING AS THE STUDY OF LITERATURE

XIV. LITERATURE

It is now agreed that school reading, while being, on one side, practice in a skilled activity, is on the other the natural introduction to literature. The selections that the English pupil reads should come from those sources which the English race has found to be best. That should be so, not only that he may develop a discriminating taste and insensibly absorb the ennobling ideals of character and conduct that belong to the English people, but because he will in this way become acquainted with the language at its best. Literature is the store of the world's culture, the doors of the past, the present, and the future, and reading should be presented as the key of these doors. No idea of it that is less comprehensive can be held to be satisfactory. No subject is more liberal. Besides widening and illuminating experience, it stimulates the imagination. It gives information about human character—the most valuable of practical knowledge, in the highest sense of the word—and it also forms the character of the reader, its influence being powerful in proportion as it is invisible.

Many reasons can be adduced in support of the view that reading and the study of literature should be the same thing. If literature is not employed in this way, it either

disappears altogether from the curriculum, or it becomes a separate subject, in which case it is divorced from the other side-issues of reading, such as language-development and written composition, which are thereby deprived of the most valuable source of words and good style. Nothing except good literature is suitable for reading-practice, for nothing else can be read well—orally, at any rate. Books of information are usually inferior in form, and they are infinitely less varied.

In adult life many people find that they cannot read certain kinds of books. It is notorious that a large number of persons are unable to read anything except a newspaper. But the privation applies also to highly cultivated men and women as well as to those who have no intellectual interests. Charles Darwin has left on record that, to his regret, he could not read poetry, owing to his concentration upon scientific writings and work. Not a few active and intelligent people are unable to read novels. The "busy trade of life" has a narrowing effect, unless there are avenues along which the soul willingly wanders at times. Moreover, the arduous pursuit of a vocation, and the playing, working, and marrying of the normal human being, rich though they are in formative experience, tend chiefly to unreflective action and the growth of habit. In literature the school can find the addition that is needed to prevent experience from cloistering the soul, and habit from hardening and encrusting it; but only if, besides creating a taste, the literature read possesses sufficient variety of form and topic.

XV. TEXTBOOKS

The effect upon the mind produced by reading such books is indirect, and obviously very different from the result of systematic studying. Textbooks upon subjects are totally unsuitable for use as readers.

The contents of the school reader must have a formative value ; if they have also a substantive value, that is in the nature of an accident. Teachers who employ history books, nature study books, geographical readers, and so forth, during reading lessons are, therefore, pursuing a mistaken course, however excellent these books may be as storehouses of their particular kind of information. And it is no less erroneous to treat the subject-matter of the reader as so much substantive knowledge, valuable for its facts, or to deal with literature as a knowledge-subject, and to give systematic lessons about it, and about its authors, to pupils of Elementary School age ; short comments are, of course, quite suitable.

XVI. LITERARY READERS

School books, indeed, are of three kinds : books of information, to be studied ; books of formative value, to be read for enjoyment; and books by which to learn to read, and to teach the use of the native language. The graded Reader combines the two last in itself, and needs to be supplemented by other good books which can be read more easily and rapidly, and from no other motive than the desire

to enjoy their contents. These will, in the nature of things, be more continuous in character, and because they are necessarily less varied in subject than the graded Reader, and as a rule cannot approach it in literary standard, they cannot take its place.

EXERCISES

Reading, by itself, is not enough. If children are allowed to read, either orally or in silence, without any questions being put to them on the subject-matter, without any discussion of literary qualities, however simple, and without any definite language instruction and practice, their progress will be slow and small. Many of them will be content with vague notions, will fail to perceive and appreciate points of interest in what they have read, and will not attack and solve for themselves the difficulties of language that they meet.

It is of the first importance that all work directed to the use and comprehension of the native language should be free from artificiality and linked with good models. The only way in which this result can be secured is by basing it, not upon manufactured examples, but upon what has been read, and by taking care that what has been read is excellent in form and style. The natural foundation is found in the reading book. The matter read is the only possible source of such exercises, if the pupils are to feel that their language practice has a real life-value for them.

For these reasons the teacher should put questions to the

pupils, and provide them with exercises based upon the text. In doing this, it is essential that he should always follow a considered plan. To help him in this work the Readers in this series have been furnished with sets of exercises for use in class, which are arranged according to their kinds.

XVII. CONTENT EXERCISES

The reader's memory of the details of what he has read should be clear. To prevent him from resting in a confused impression, specific questions are asked, especially in the earlier books. To make sure that he has formed a general idea of the whole, he is asked to summarize it. An exercise on subject-matter may, and generally does, serve a linguistic purpose as well.

XVIII. IMAGINATIVE EXERCISES

Arising out of questions on the subject-matter is another type which demands a constructive effort from the pupil. He may, for example, be asked to complete an unfinished story, or to continue the story narrated in an extract in a way defined for him or left to his own choice. He may be asked to tell a story from a different point of view, e.g. as the incidents in a story narrated by one of the characters would have been told by another character; or, if it was narrated by an outsider, as it would have been told by one of the participants; or to describe the scene that he has read about under certain conditions when it has assumed a different aspect, e.g. to substitute winter for summer, or

storm for calm. Or he may be asked to expand an incident into a story, or to tell a parallel story. Or his dramatic faculty may be brought into play, either by his actually dramatizing a narrative piece alone, or by improvised drama with several pupils sharing in the work.

XIX. LANGUAGE EXERCISES

Reading is important in relation to the use and understanding of speech and writing. The pupil is to be taught to understand his fellows and to express himself. There are, then, four kinds of language exercises :

(*a*) Exercises designed to improve skill in expression in speech.

(*b*) Exercises directed towards the understanding of spoken English.

(*c*) Exercises designed to increase skill in writing.

(*d*) Exercises directed towards the understanding of the written language.

This is a convenient division. But it must not be supposed that there are four separate departments. Speech affects written language, and knowledge affects skill, and vice versa.

The following types of exercises, among others, have therefore been devised :

Exercises on the meaning and use of words, phrases, and sentences. These are intended to increase the pupil's vocabulary, to make his employment of it more facile, and to render his realization of the meaning of each term and phrase more precise.

Some of the exercises require the pupil to state a precise meaning, others to choose the right word or phrase, others to distinguish between shades of meaning. It is only in this way that the pupil can arrive at some notion of the care and skill which differentiate the good writer's employment of language from the looseness that characterizes the language which he is accustomed to hear from others and to use himself. The writing of such exercises is a necessary part of the process of forming an ideal of language, and makes language familiar to the pupil, so that he can employ it as a flexible instrument.

A feature which strongly distinguishes the curriculum of the Secondary School from that of the Primary School is that in the former foreign languages are studied, while in the latter the pupils are confined to the use and study of their native tongue. The study of a language whose form is different from English, besides imparting a knowledge of the language in question, serves to throw into relief features of English which might otherwise have remained unnoticed ; and the practice of translation from a foreign language similarly exercises the pupil in the use of his own speech, and demands from him concentrated attention. It is thus, if properly conducted, a very valuable exercise in English.

The teacher in the Elementary School, if he is to secure comparable results, has no resource except to employ passages of English for such work. It is recommended, therefore, that at convenient times he should take, either in connection with the reading lesson or otherwise, particular passages

in the extracts contained in the class Reader. Each piece should be carefully selected for its special suitability for this purpose. It should be treated exhaustively, dissected phrase by phrase, and discussed till every word and sentence is thoroughly understood. Synonyms should be required ; sentences should be asked for in which each of the harder words is exhibited in proper action. In fact, the teacher should gather up in this part of his teaching any and all of the types of exercise which have already been described.

The scheme of the language exercises is as follows :

(*a*) Exercises on the meaning and use of words.
(*b*) Exercises on the choice of words.
(*c*) Exercises on the meaning of phrases.
(*d*) Exercises in constructing phrases.
(*e*) Exercises in the study and dissection of sentences.
(*f*) Exercises in sentence making.
(*g*) Exercises in linking sentences.
(*h*) Exercises in punctuation.
(*i*) Exercises in modes of expression.

XX. GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES

The general aims of the English instruction at all stages are fluent and correct speech and writing, and the power to listen and read with understanding, besides the possession of some degree of literary taste. All the exercises described in the previous section have been devised to further the first two aims. There is another type of exercise, the grammatical, which still remains to be considered.

Grammar is a subject much under dispute. When teachers meet to discuss the question whether it should be taught in the Primary School, differences of opinion invariably appear. That is due partly to a real difference of principle, and partly to the fact that the speakers attach different meanings to the term grammar. If it means the writing, and examination, and manipulation of English words, phrases, and sentences, many of the types of exercises here classed as language exercises are grammatical. If it means the precise definition of features of English, regarded in isolation and treated abstractly, they are not grammatical exercises.

Actual grammatical mistakes should, of course, be rectified at all times by the teacher, whatever his views upon the types of linguistic exercises that it is desirable his pupils should have.

For the use of those who believe that the intelligent and skilful use of language necessarily involves some study of abstract grammar, sets of suitable grammatical exercises are added in the later books of this series. If a knowledge of abstract grammar is valuable as an aid to the writing and understanding of one's native speech, its utility must be proportional to the degree in which it is connected with what is heard and read, and with what is spoken and written. The grammatical exercises, like the rest, should be securely based upon the texts in the reading books, and the teacher should be careful to ascertain that his pupils' skill in expression is advancing step by step with their grammatical knowledge.

The study of grammar should deal first with the most prominent features of English, such as the functions of words, and the main types of sentences, and in the Primary School nothing but harm can come from over elaboration of detail. It should be realized, too, that there are many pupils whose mental equipment does not qualify them for dealing with language in the abstract, and whether this is because they are too young, or because they have not sufficient ability, there is no ground for causing such pupils to study abstract grammar.

The attempt to insinuate grammatical ideas without the use of grammatical terms is also indefensible. A pupil who cannot understand and remember that a noun is a word used as the name of a thing is quite incapable of benefiting from a protracted process of picking out the "naming-words" in a passage. Further, the periphrases of grammatical terms which are used by teachers who put their faith in this way of teaching are more cumbrous than the terms for which they are substituted, and their cumbrousness is itself a source of annoyance to the teacher and difficulty to the pupil. A teacher who is confident that his pupils are capable of understanding grammatical ideas, and that their linguistic power will be increased by their study of such ideas, may still more confidently teach them the traditional grammatical terms. For this reason, these terms are employed in the sets of grammatical exercises found in the later volumes of this series, which are confined to the simpler phases of English as normally written, being, in fact, an exposition in broad outline of the formal

structure of the English language, just as the other linguistic exercises are illustrations of its normal behaviour.

XXI. ORAL AND WRITTEN WORK

In the remarks upon the exercises in the four books of the first series, it was urged that, in the earlier stages, practice with language should be entirely oral, and that written answers should not be required until about the age of nine, and should be gradually increased as the pupil grows older. After the age of eleven, although written work must become the basis of the composition teaching, the oral side does not lose its place. It should be continued throughout the whole of school life, advancing as the inseparable partner of written expression.

THE WESTMINSTER READERS

SECOND SERIES BOOK THREE

TREASURES OF LITERATURE

THE

WESTMINSTER READERS

By ERNEST J. KENNY and
J. H. JAGGER, M.A., D.LITT.

FIRST SERIES

BOOK I. DAYS IN STORYLAND
Compiled by ERNEST J. KENNY
Limp Cloth, 1/4 ; Cloth Boards, 1/6

BOOK II. A GARLAND OF LEGENDS
Compiled by ERNEST J. KENNY
Limp Cloth, 1/5 ; Cloth Boards, 1/7

BOOK III. GOLDEN TALES
Compiled by ERNEST J. KENNY
Limp Cloth, 1/8 ; Cloth Boards, 1/10

BOOK IV. REALMS OF ADVENTURE
Compiled by J. H. JAGGER, M.A., D.LITT.
Limp Cloth, 1/10 ; Cloth Boards, 2/-

TEACHER'S BOOKS. Cloth Boards,
Books I and II, each 2/3
Book III, 2/6 ; Book IV, 2/9

SECOND SERIES

BOOK I. JOYOUS HOURS
Compiled by J. H. JAGGER, M.A., D.LITT.
Limp Cloth, 2/- ; Cloth Boards, 2/2

BOOK II. THE CHARM OF BOOKS
Compiled by J. H. JAGGER, M.A., D.LITT.
Limp Cloth, 2/2 ; Cloth Boards, 2/4

BOOK III. TREASURES OF LITERATURE
Compiled by J. H. JAGGER, M.A., D.LITT.
Limp Cloth, 2/4 ; Cloth Boards, 2/6

TEACHER'S BOOKS. Cloth Boards
Books I, II, and III

Each book is profusely illustrated

UNIVERSITY OF LONDON PRESS, LTD.
10 & 11 WARWICK LANE, LONDON, E.C.4

"ENGLAND HATH HILLSIDES MEET FOR TILLAGE."

[*Frontispiece*, 2–III.

THE WESTMINSTER READERS

TREASURES OF LITERATURE

Compiled by

J. H. JAGGER, M.A., D.LITT.

Author of A Book of English Poems, Modern English, etc.

SECOND SERIES BOOK THREE

WITH THIRTY-THREE ILLUSTRATIONS IN BLACK AND WHITE AND FOUR PLATES IN COLOUR BY RICHARD B. OGLE

1933

UNIVERSITY OF LONDON PRESS, LTD.

Printed in Great Britain for the UNIVERSITY OF LONDON PRESS, LTD.
by HAZELL, WATSON AND VINEY, LTD., London and Aylesbury.

BOOK III

CONTENTS

			PAGE
I.	Into an Unknown Land	Samuel Butler	9
II.	A Dithyramb on a Dog	A. G. Gardiner	25
III.	A Description of Britain	Geoffrey of Monmouth	31
IV.	On England	The Right Honourable Stanley Baldwin	34
V.	*The Last Poem*	Sir Cecil Spring Rice	42
	Characters of Three Famous Englishmen:		
VI.	John Hampden	Lord Clarendon	44
VII.	The Duke of Marlborough	Sir John Fortescue	49
VIII.	George Stephenson	Samuel Smiles	56
IX.	"Let us now Praise Famous Men"	*Ecclesiasticus*	65
X.	The Bald Eagle	Alexander Wilson	67
XI.	*The Black Vulture*	George Sterling	71
XII.	The Mountains and the Sea	Oliver Wendell Holmes	72

			PAGE
XIII.	TRUTH AND ERROR	OLIVER WENDELL HOLMES	74
XIV.	THE DEFENCE OF ALICANTE	SIR JOHN FORTESCUE	78
XV.	*How sleep the Brave*	WILLIAM COLLINS	82
XVI.	THE CITY OF GOD	*Revelation*	84
XVII.	*The Heavenly City* .	F. P. B.	88
XVIII.	THE ROMAN GUIDE	MARK TWAIN	90
XIX.	THE TROUT	IZAAK WALTON	98
XX.	*The Milkmaid's Song*	CHRISTOPHER MARLOWE	106
XXI.	*The Mother's Answer*	SIR WALTER RALEIGH	108
XXII.	THE DEATH OF CÆSAR	PLUTARCH, *trans.* SIR THOMAS NORTH	110
XXIII.	*Antony's Speech over the Body of Cæsar*	WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE	118
XXIV.	THE VISION OF MIRZAH	JOSEPH ADDISON	128
XXV.	THE TRIAL OF WARREN HASTINGS	LORD MACAULAY	137
XXVI.	THE REVENGE	SIR WALTER RALEIGH	140
XXVII.	*Evening in Paradise*	JOHN MILTON	149
XXVIII.	SIRIUS .	SIR ROBERT BALL	151
XXIX.	*The Spacious Firmament*	JOSEPH ADDISON	163

PAGE

XXX. SPEECH AGAINST SLAVERY — WILLIAM PITT — 165

XXXI. THE ORIGIN OF ROAST PORK — CHARLES LAMB — 172

XXXII. AMBER . SIR FREDERICK TREVES — 179

XXXIII. PIRATE VERSUS SHARK — J. E. PATTERSON — 188

XXXIV. AUTUMN . RICHARD JEFFERIES — 202

XXXV. *The Procession of the Seasons* — EDMUND SPENSER — 208

XXXVI. THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA — WILLIAM ROBERTSON — 210

XXXVII. *There was an Indian* SIR JAMES SQUIRE — 228

XXXVIII. DIFFERENCE OF RACES — GEORGE BORROW — 230

XXXIX. MR. WELLER DELIVERS SOME CRITICAL SENTIMENTS . CHARLES DICKENS — 243

XL. GOSSAMER — GILBERT WHITE — 256

XLI. *Ozymandias* . P. B. SHELLEY — 261

XLII. BABYLON TO-DAY . GERTRUDE BELL — 263

Titles of Poems are printed in italics.

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

FOR permission to print the pieces named, grateful thanks are due to the following authors, publishers, and owners of copyright: Messrs. J. M. Dent & Sons for "A Dithyramb on a Dog," from Mr. A. G. Gardiner's *Leaves in the Wind*; Messrs. Philip Allan & Co. for "On England," from the book of the same name by the Right Honourable Stanley Baldwin; Messrs. Longmans, Green & Co. for "The Last Poem," from *Poems*, by Sir Cecil Spring Rice; Messrs. Macmillan & Co. and Sir John Fortescue for two extracts from the latter's *History of the British Army*; George Sterling for "The Black Vulture," from *The Caged Eagle*; Messrs. Cassell & Co. for "Sirius," from *The Story of the Heavens*, by Sir Robert Ball, and for "Amber," from *The Other Side of the Lantern*, by Sir Frederick Treves; Messrs. Heinemann for "Pirate versus Shark," from *My Vagabondage*, by J. E. Patterson; Sir James Squire for his poem "There was an Indian"; Lady Richmond for "Babylon To-day," from *Amurath to Amurath*, by Gertrude Bell.

I

INTO AN UNKNOWN LAND

I HAD no time to lose, for it was now between ten and eleven in the morning. Fortunately I was well equipped, for on leaving the camp and the horses at the lower end of the valley I had provided myself (according to my custom) with everything that I was likely to want for four or five days. Accordingly, I took as many biscuits as I thought I could carry, and also some tobacco, tea, and a few matches. I rolled all these things inside my blankets, and strapped them very tightly, making the whole into a long roll of some seven feet in length and six inches in diameter. Then I tied the two ends together, and put the whole round my neck and over one shoulder. This is the easiest way of carrying a heavy swag, for one can rest one's self by shifting the burden from one shoulder to the other. I strapped my pannikin and a small axe about my waist, and thus equipped began to ascend the valley.

I crossed and recrossed the stream several times without difficulty, for there were many good fords. At one o'clock I was at the foot of the saddle ; for four hours I mounted, the last two on the snow, where the going was easier ; by five I was within five minutes of the top, in a state of excitement greater, I think, than I had ever known before. Ten minutes more, and the cold air from the other side came rushing upon me.

A glance. I was *not* on the main range.

Another glance. There was an awful river, muddy and horribly angry, roaring over an immense river-bed, thousands of feet below me. It went round to the westward, and I could see no farther up the valley, save that there were enormous glaciers which must extend round the source of the river, and from which it must spring.

Another glance, and then I remained motionless.

There was an easy pass in the mountains directly opposite to me, through which I caught a glimpse of an immeasurable extent of blue and distant plains.

Easy? Yes, perfectly easy: grassed nearly to the summit, which was, as it were, an open path between two glaciers, from which an inconsiderable stream came tumbling down over rough but very possible hillsides, till it got down to the level of the great river, and formed a flat where there was grass and a small bush of stunted timber.

Almost before I could believe my eyes, a cloud had come up from the valley on the other side, and the plains were hidden. What wonderful luck was mine! Had I arrived five minutes later, the cloud would have been over the pass, and I should not have known of its existence. Now that the cloud was there, I began to doubt my memory, and to be uncertain whether it had been more than a blue line of distant vapour that had filled up the opening. I could only be certain of this much, namely, that the river in the valley below

must be the one next to the northward of that which flowed past my water-station ; of this there could be no doubt. Could I, however, imagine that my luck should have led me up a wrong river in search of a pass, and yet brought me to the spot where I could detect the one weak place in the fortifications of a more northern basin ? This was too improbable. But even as I doubted there came a rent in the cloud opposite, and a second time I saw blue lines of heaving downs, growing gradually fainter, and retiring into a far space of plain. It was substantial ; there had been no mistake whatsoever. I had hardly made myself perfectly sure of this, ere the rent in the clouds joined up again and I could see nothing more.

What, then, should I do ? The night would be upon me shortly, and I was already chilled with standing still after the exertion of climbing. To stay where I was would be impossible ; I must either go backwards or forwards. I found a rock which gave me shelter from the evening wind, and took a good pull at the brandy flask, which immediately warmed and encouraged me. . . .

I had still one hour of good daylight during which I might begin my descent on to some suitable camping-ground, but there was not a moment to be lost. At first I got along rapidly, for I was on the snow, and sunk into it enough to save me from falling, though I went forward straight down the mountain side as fast as I could ; but there was less snow on this side than on

the other, and I was soon done with it, getting into a coomb of dangerous and very stony ground, where a slip might have given me a disastrous fall. But I was careful with all my speed, and got safely to the bottom, where there were patches of coarse grass, and an attempt here and there at brushwood: what was below this I could not see. I advanced a few hundred yards further and found that I was on the brink of a frightful precipice, which no one in his senses would attempt descending. I bethought me, however, to try the creek which drained the coomb, and see whether it might not have made itself a smoother way. In a few minutes I found myself at the upper end of a chasm in the rocks, something like Twll Dhu, only on a greatly larger scale; the creek had found its way into it, and had worn a deep channel through a material which appeared softer than that upon the other side of the mountain. I believe it must have been a different geological formation, though I regret to say that I cannot tell what it was.

I looked at the rift in great doubt: then I went a little way on either side of it, and found myself looking over the edge of horrible precipices on to the river, which roared some four or five thousand feet below me. I dared not think of getting down at all, unless I committed myself to the rift, of which I was hopeful when I reflected that the rock was soft, and that the water might have worn its channel tolerably evenly through the whole extent. The darkness was in-

I WENT INTO THE CHASM.

creasing with every minute, but I should have twilight for another half-hour, so I went into the chasm (though by no means without fear), and resolved to return and camp, and try some other path next day, should I come to any serious difficulty. In about five minutes I had completely lost my head ; the side of the rift became hundreds of feet in height, and overhung so that I could not see the sky. It was full of rocks, and I had many falls and bruises. I was wet through from falling into the water, of which there was no great volume, but it had such force that I could do nothing against it ; once I had to leap down a not inconsiderable waterfall into a deep pool below, and my swag was so heavy that I was very nearly drowned. I had indeed a hair's-breadth escape ; but as luck would have it, Providence was on my side. Shortly afterwards I began to fancy that the rift was getting wider, and that there was more brushwood. Presently I found myself on an open grassy slope, and feeling my way a little further along the stream, I came upon a flat place with wood, where I could camp comfortably ; which was well, for it was now quite dark.

My first care was for my matches ; were they dry ? The outside of my swag had got completely wet ; but, on undoing the blankets, I found things warm and dry within. How thankful I was ! I lit a fire, and was grateful for its warmth and company. I made myself some tea and ate two of my biscuits : my

brandy I did not touch, for I had little left, and might want it when my courage failed me. All that I did, I did almost mechanically, for I could not realize my situation to myself, beyond knowing that I was alone, and that return through the chasm which I had just descended would be impossible. It is a dreadful feeling, that of being cut off from all one's kind. I was still full of hope, and built golden castles for myself as soon as I was warmed with food and fire ; but I do not believe that any man could long retain his reason in such solitude, unless he had the companionship of animals. One begins doubting one's own identity.

I remember deriving comfort even from the sight of my blankets, and the sound of my watch ticking—things which seemed to link me to other people ; but the screaming of the wood-hens frightened me, as also a chattering bird which I had never heard before, and which seemed to laugh at me ; though I soon got used to it, and before long could fancy that it was many years since I had first heard it.

I took off my clothes, and wrapped my inside blanket about me, till my things were dry. The night was very still, and I made a roaring fire ; so I soon got warm, and at last could put my clothes on again. Then I strapped my blanket round me, and went to sleep as near the fire as I could.

I dreamed that there was an organ placed in my master's wool-shed ; the wool-shed faded away, and the

organ seemed to grow and grow amid the blaze of brilliant light till it became like a golden city upon the side of a mountain, with rows upon rows of pipes set in cliffs and precipices, one above the other, and in mysterious crevices like that of Fingal, within whose depths I could see the burnished pillars gleaming. In the front there was a flight of lofty terraces, at the top of which I could see a man with his head bowed forward towards a key-board, and his body swaying from side to side amid the storm of huge arpeggios that came crashing overhead and around. Then there was one who brushed me on the shoulder, and said: "Do you not see? it is Handel"; but I had hardly apprehended, and was trying to scale the terraces, and get near him, when I awoke dazzled with the vividness and distinctness of the dream.

A piece of wood had burned through, and the ends had fallen into the ashes with a blaze; this, I suppose, had both given me my dream and robbed me of it. I was bitterly disappointed, and sitting up on my elbow, came back to reality and my strange surroundings as best I could.

I was thoroughly aroused—moreover, I felt a foreshadowing as though my attention were arrested by something more than a dream, although no sense in particular was as yet appealed to. I held my breath and waited, and then I heard—was it fancy? Nay; I listened again and again, and I *did* hear a faint and extremely distant sound of music, like that of an

æolian harp, borne upon the wind which was blowing fresh and chill from the opposite mountains.

Thank Heaven, whatever it was, it was over now. I reasoned with myself, and recovered my firmness. I became convinced that I had only been dreaming more vividly than usual. Soon I began even to laugh, and think what a fool I was to be frightened at nothing, reminding myself that even if I were to come to a bad end, it would be no such dreadful matter after all. I said my prayers, a duty which I had too often neglected, and in a little time fell into a really refreshing sleep, which lasted till broad daylight, and restored me. I rose, and searching among the embers of my fire, I found a few live coals and soon had a blaze again. I got breakfast, and was delighted to have the company of several small birds, which hopped about me and perched on my boots and hands. I felt comparatively happy, but I can assure the reader that I had had a far worse time of it than I have told him ; and I strongly recommend him to remain in Europe if he can ; or, at any rate, in some country which has been explored and settled, rather than go into places where others have not been before him. Exploring is delightful to look forward to and back upon, but it is not comfortable at the time, unless it be of such an easy nature as not to deserve the name. . . .

After a slow but steady climb of between three and four hours, during which I met with no serious hindrance, I found myself upon a tableland, and

close to a glacier which I recognized as marking the summit of the pass. Above it towered a succession of rugged precipices and snowy mountain sides. The solitude was greater than I could bear ; the mountain upon my master's sheep-run was a crowded thoroughfare in comparison with this sombre, sullen place. The air, moreover, was rank and heavy, which made the loneliness even more oppressive. There was an inky gloom over all that was not covered with snow and ice. Grass there was none.

Each moment I felt increasing upon me that dreadful doubt as to my own identity—as to the continuity of my past and present existence—which is the first sign of that distraction which comes on those who have lost themselves in the bush. I had fought against this feeling hitherto, and had conquered it ; but the intense silence and gloom of this rocky wilderness were too much for me, and I felt that my power of collecting myself was beginning to be impaired.

I rested for a little while, and then advanced over very rough ground, until I reached the lower end of the glacier. Then I saw another glacier, descending from the eastern side into a small lake. I passed along the western side of the lake, where the ground was easier, and when I had got almost half way I expected that I should see the plains which I had already seen from the opposite mountains ; but it was not to be so, for the clouds rolled up to the very summit of the pass, though they did not overlip it on to the side from

which I had come. I therefore soon found myself enshrouded by a cold, thin vapour, which prevented my seeing more than a very few yards in front of me. Then I came upon a large patch of old snow, in which I could distinctly trace the half-melted tracks of goats—and in one place, as it seemed to me, there had been a dog following them. Had I lighted upon a land of shepherds? The ground, where not covered with snow, was so poor and stony, and there was so little herbage, that I could see no sign of a path or regular sheep-track. But I could not help feeling rather uneasy as I wondered what sort of a reception I might meet with if I were to come suddenly upon inhabitants. I was thinking of this, and proceeding cautiously through the mist, when I began to fancy that I saw some objects darker than the cloud looming in front of me. A few steps brought me nearer, and a shudder of unutterable horror ran through me when I saw a circle of gigantic forms, many times higher than myself, upstanding firm and grey through the veil of cloud before me.

I suppose I must have fainted, for I found myself some time afterwards sitting upon the ground, sick and deadly cold. There were the figures, quite still and silent, seen vaguely through the thick gloom, but in human shape indisputably.

A sudden thought struck me, which would doubtless have occurred to me at once had I not been prepossessed with forebodings at the time that I first saw the

figures, and had not the cloud concealed them from me—I mean that they were not living beings, but statues. I determined that I would count fifty slowly, and was sure that the objects were not alive if during that time I could detect no sign of motion.

How thankful was I when I came to the end of my fifty and there had been no movement !

I counted a second time—but again all was still.

I then advanced timidly forward, and in another moment I saw that my surmise was correct. I had come upon a sort of Stonehenge of rude and barbaric figures. They had been all seated, but two had fallen. They were barbarous—neither Egyptian, nor Assyrian, nor Japanese—different from any of them, and yet akin to all. They were six or seven times larger than life, of great antiquity, worn and lichen-grown. They were ten in number. There was snow upon their heads and wherever snow could lodge. Each statue had been built of four or five enormous blocks, but how these had been raised and put together is known to those alone who raised them. Each was terrible after a different kind. One was raging furiously, as in pain and great despair ; another was lean and cadaverous with famine ; another cruel and idiotic, but with the silliest simper that can be conceived—this one had fallen, and looked exquisitely ludicrous in its fall—the mouths of all were more or less open, and as I looked at them from behind, I saw that their heads had been hollowed.

I was sick and shivering with cold. Solitude had unmanned me already, and I was utterly unfit to have come upon such an assembly of fiends in such a dreadful wilderness and without preparation. I would have given everything I had in the world to have been back at my master's station ; but that was not to be thought of ; my head was failing, and I felt sure that I could never get back alive.

Then came a gust of howling wind accompanied with a moan from one of the statues above me. I clasped my hands in fear. I felt like a rat caught in a trap, as though I could have turned and bitten at whatever thing was nearest to me. The wildness of the wind increased, the moans grew shriller, coming from several statues, and swelling into a chorus. I almost immediately knew what it was, but the sound was so unearthly that this was but little consolation. The inhuman beings into whose hearts the Evil One had put it to conceive these statues had made their heads into a sort of organ-pipe, so that their mouths should catch the wind and sound with its blowing. It was horrible. However brave a man might be, he could never stand such a concert from such lips, and in such a place. I heaped every invective upon them that my tongue could utter as I rushed away from them into the mist, and even after I had lost sight of them, and turning my head round could see nothing but the storm-wraiths driving behind me, I heard their ghostly chanting, and felt as though one of them

would rush after me and grip me in his hand and throttle me.

And now I found myself on a narrow path which followed a small watercourse. I was too glad to have an easy track for my flight to lay hold of the full significance of its existence. The thought, however, soon presented itself to me that I must be in an inhabited country, but one which was yet unknown. What, then, was to be my fate at the hands of its inhabitants? Should I be taken and offered up as a burnt-offering to those hideous guardians of the pass? It might be so. I shuddered at the thought, yet the horrors of solitude had now fairly possessed me; and so dazed was I, and chilled, and woebegone, that I could lay hold of no idea firmly amid the crowd of fancies that kept wandering in upon my brain.

I hurried onward—down, down, down. More streams came in: then there was a bridge, a few pine logs thrown over the water; but they gave me comfort, for savages do not make bridges. Then I had a treat such as I can never convey on paper—a moment, perhaps, the most striking and unexpected in my whole life—the one I think that, with some three or four exceptions, I would most gladly have again, were I able to recall it. I got below the level of the clouds, into a burst of brilliant evening sunshine. I was facing the north-west, and the sun was full upon me. Oh, how its light cheered me! But what I saw! It was such an expanse as was revealed to Moses when he

stood upon the summit of Mount Pisgah, and beheld that promised land which it was not to be his to enter. The beautiful sunset sky was crimson and gold ; blue, silver, and purple ; exquisite and tranquillizing : fading away therein were plains, on which I could see many a town and city, with buildings that had lofty steeples and rounded domes. Nearer beneath me lay ridge behind ridge, outline behind outline, sunlight behind shadow, and shadow behind sunlight, gully and serrated ravine. I saw large pine forests, and the glitter of a noble river winding its way upon the plains ; also many villages and hamlets, some of them quite near at hand ; and it was on these that I pondered most. I sank upon the ground at the foot of a large tree and thought what I had best do ; but I could not collect myself. I was quite tired out ; and presently, feeling warmed by the sun, and quieted, I fell off into a profound sleep.

From *Erewhon*, by SAMUEL BUTLER.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. Punctuate the following :

(*a*) oh well bowled well bowled johnson cries the captain catching up the ball and sending it high above the rook trees while the third marylebone man walks away from the wicket and old bailey gravely sets up the middle stump again and puts the bails on how many runs away scamper three boys to the scoring table and are back again in a minute amongst the rest of the eleven who are collected together in a knot between wicket only eighteen runs and

three wickets down huzza for old rugby sings out jack raggles the long stop toughest and burliest of boys commonly called swiper jack and forthwith stands on his head and brandishes his legs in the air in triumph till the next boy catches hold of his heels and throws him over on to his back

2. " I *crossed* and *recrossed* the stream." Make four pairs of similar structure, e.g. " Dressed and undressed," " Commended and recommended."

3. Use in sentences : Six inches in diameter ; to lose one's head ; a hair's-breadth escape ; burnished pillars ; comparatively happy.

II. Grammar Exercises

4. Classify the adverbs in the following according to their kinds :
(*a*) I was well equipped.
(*b*) This happened a very long time ago.
(*c*) Thus equipped, I began to ascend the valley.
(*d*) I was not on the main range.
(*e*) I could see no farther up the valley.
(*f*) This was too improbable.
(*g*) The rent in the clouds joined up again.
(*h*) It was now quite dark.

5. Convert the following words into adverbs : *faint*, *cloudy*, *lively*, *certain*, *hard*, *after*, *near*. Which of them can be also used as adverbs without change ?

6. Make sentences, two for each word, employing the following words, first as adverbs and then as some other part of speech, giving the name of the latter in each case : *yesterday*, *home*, *fast*, *near*, *no*, *straight*, *down*, *more*, *low*, *even*, *inside*.

II

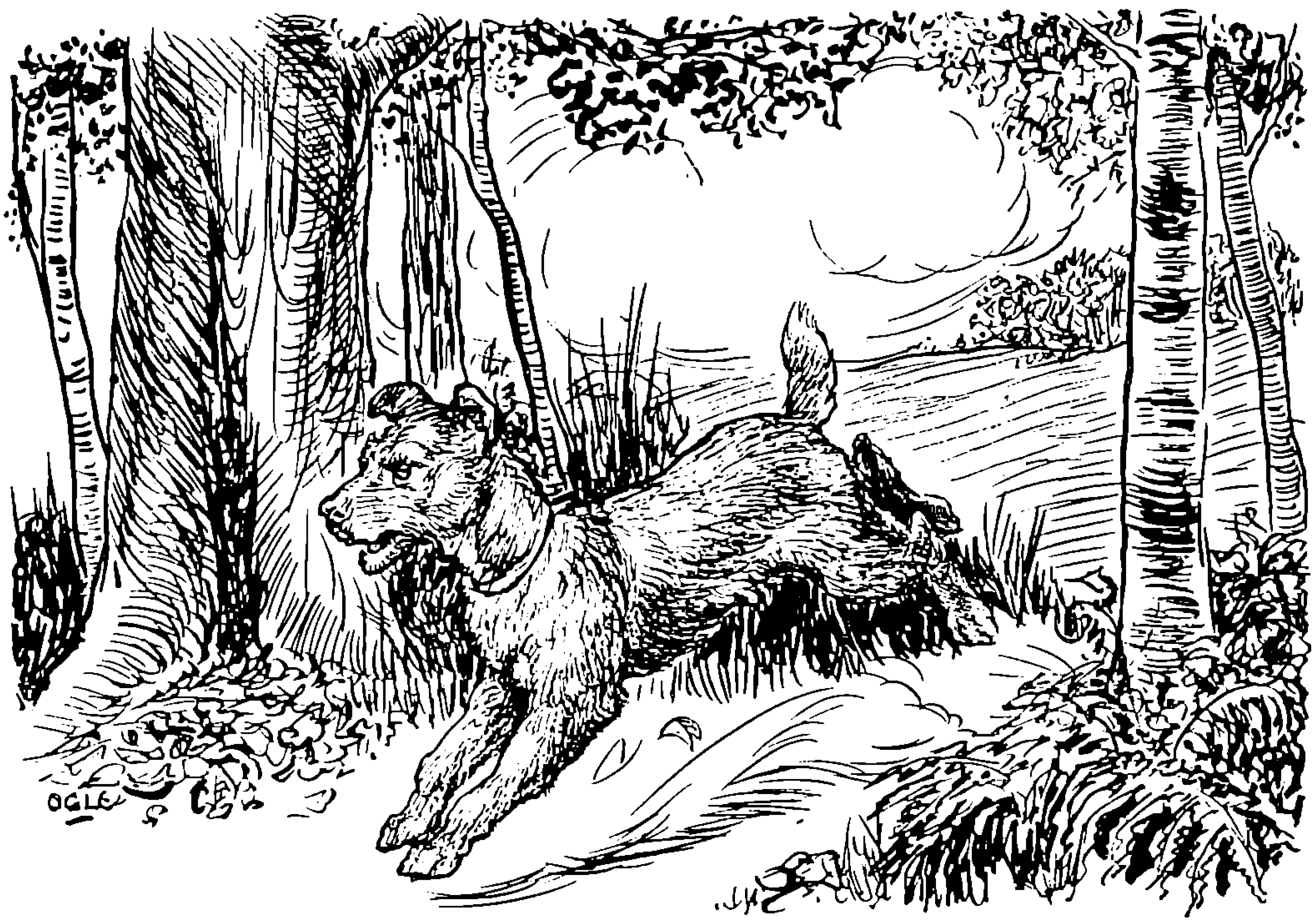
A DITHYRAMB ON A DOG

Chum, roped securely to the cherry tree, is barking at the universe in general and at the cows in the paddock beyond the orchard in particular. Occasionally he pauses to snap at passing bees, of which the orchard is full on this bright May morning ; but he soon tires of this diversion and resumes his loud-voiced demand to share in the good things that are going. For the sun is high, the cuckoo is shouting from the valley, and the woods are calling him to unknown adventures. They shall not call in vain. Work shall be suspended and this morning shall be dedicated to his service. For this is the day of deliverance. The word is spoken and the shadow of the sword is lifted. The battle for his biscuit is won.

He does not know what a narrow shave he has had. He does not know that for weeks past he has been under sentence of death as an encumbrance, a luxury that this savage world of men could no longer afford ; that having taken away his bones we were about to take away his biscuits and leave his cheerful companionship a memory of the dream-world we lived in before the Great Killing began. All this he does not know. That is one of the numerous advantages of being a dog. He knows nothing of the infamies of men or of the incertitudes of life. He does not look

before and after and pine for what is not. He has no yesterday and no to-morrow—only the happy or unhappy present. He does not, as Whitman says, " lie awake at night thinking of his soul," or lamenting his past or worrying about his future. His bereavements do not disturb him, and he doesn't care twopence about his career. He has no debts and hungers for no honours. He would rather have a bone than a baronetcy. He does not turn over old albums, with their pictured records of forgotten holidays and happy scenes, and yearn for the " tender grace of a day that is dead," or wonder whether he will keep his job and what will become of his " poor old family," as Stevenson used to say, if he doesn't, or speculate whether the war will end this year, next year, some time, or never. He doesn't even know there is a war. Think of it ! He doesn't know there is a war. O happy dog ! Give him a bone, a biscuit, a good word, and a scamper in the woods, and his cup of joy is full. Would that my needs were as few and as easily satisfied.

And now his biscuit is safe and I have the rare privilege of rejoicing with Sir Frederick Banbury. I do not know that I should go as far as he seems to go, for in that touching little speech of his at the Cannon Street Hotel he indicated that nothing in the heavens above or in the earth beneath should stand between him and his dogs. " In August 1914," he said, " my son went to France. The night before he left he



A SCAMPER IN THE WOODS.

said, ‘ Father, look after my dogs and horses while I am away.’ I said, ‘ Don’t you worry about them.’ He was killed in December, and I have got the horses and dogs now. As I said to Mr. Bonar Law last year, I should like to see the man who would tell me I have not to look after my son’s dogs and horses.” Well, I suppose that if the choice were between a German victory and a dog biscuit, the dog biscuit would have to go, Sir Frederick. But I rejoice with you that we have not to make the choice. I rejoice that the sentence of death has passed from your dead son’s horses and dogs, and from that noble creature under the cherry tree.

Look at him, barking now at the cows, now with eloquent appeal to me, and then, having caught my eye, turning sportively to worry the hated rope. He knows that my intentions this morning are honourable. I think he feels that, in spite of appearances, I am in that humour in which at any radiant moment the magic word "Walk" may leap from my lips. What a word that is! No sleep so sound that it will not penetrate its depths and bring him, passionately awake, to his feet. He would sacrifice the whole dictionary for that one electric syllable. That and its brother "Bones." Give him these good, sound, sensible words, and all the fancies of the poets and all the rhetoric of the statesmen may whistle down the winds. He has no use for them. "Walk" and "Bones"—that is the speech a fellow can understand.

Yes, Chum knows very well that I am thinking about him, and thinking about him in an uncommonly friendly way. That is the secret of the strange intimacy between us. We may love other animals, and other animals may respond to our affection. But the dog is the only animal who has a reciprocal intelligence. As Coleridge says, he is the only animal that looks upward to man, strains to catch his meanings, hungers for his approval. Stroke a cat or a horse, and it will have a physical pleasure; but pat Chum and call him "Good dog!" and he has a spiritual pleasure. He feels good. He is pleased because you

are pleased. His tail, his eyebrows, every part of him, proclaim that "God's in His heaven, all's right with the world," and that he himself is on the side of the angels.

And just as he has the sense of virtue, so also he has the sense of sin. A cat may be taught not to do certain things, but if it is caught out and flees, it flees not from shame, but from fear. But the shame of a dog touches an abyss of misery as bottomless as any human emotion. He has fallen out of the state of grace, and nothing but the absolution and remission of his sin will restore him to happiness. By his association with man he seems to have caught something of his capacity for spiritual misery. I had an Airedale once who had moods of despondency as abysmal as my own. He was as sentimental as any minor poet, and at the sound of certain tunes on the piano he would break into paroxysms of grief, whining and moaning as if in one moment of concentrated anguish he recalled every bereavement he had endured, every bone he had lost, every stone heaved at him by his hated enemy, the butcher's boy. Indeed, there are times when the dog approximates so close to our intelligence that he seems to be of us, a sort of humble relation of ourselves, with our elementary feelings, but not our gift of expression, our joy but not our laughter, our misery but not our tears, our thoughts but not our speech. To sentence him to death would be almost like homicide, and the day of his reprieve should be

celebrated as a festival. . . . Come, old friend, Let us away to the woods. "Walk."

From *Leaves in the Wind*, by "ALPHA OF THE PLOUGH."

EXERCISES

1. Find information about these persons mentioned in the text: Whitman, Stevenson, Mr. Bonar Law, Coleridge.

2. Who wrote these words: "God's in His heaven, all's right with the world"?

I. Composition Exercises

3. Explain what is meant by:
   - (*a*) "A narrow shave."
   - (*b*) "The Great Killing."
   - (*c*) "Having caught my eye."
   - (*d*) "My intentions are honourable."
   - (*e*) "A reciprocal intelligence."
   - (*f*) "On the side of the angels."
   - (*g*) "The absolution and remission of his sin."

4. Notice the alliteration in: "He would rather have a *b*one than a *b*aronetcy." There are several other phrases in this piece which contain similar alliterations: find three of them.

II. Grammar Exercises

5. From this extract quote three sentences which contain verbs used transitively, and three which contain verbs used intransitively.

6. Look up in a dictionary the origin of these words: *Airedale*, *greengage*, *boycott*, *mackintosh*, *sandwich*, *slave*, *hazard*, *calico*, *gipsy*, *lynch*, *canter*, *plimsoll*, *lumber*, and *gamp*.

7. Classify the nouns in the following as concrete or abstract:

Almost before I could believe my eyes, a cloud had come up from the valley on the other side, and the plains were hidden. What wonderful luck was mine! Had I arrived five minutes later, the cloud would have been over the pass, and I should not have known of its existence.

III

A DESCRIPTION OF BRITAIN

Britain, best of islands, lieth in the Western Ocean betwixt Gaul and Ireland, and containeth eight hundred miles in length and two hundred in breadth. Whatsoever is fitting for the use of mortal men the island doth afford in unfailing plenty. For she aboundeth in metals of every kind ; fields hath she, stretching far and wide, and hillsides meet for tillage of the best, whereon, by reason of the fruitfulness of the soil, the divers crops in their season do yield their harvests. Forests also hath she, filled with every manner of wild deer, in the glades whereof groweth grass that the cattle may find therein meet change of pasture, and flowers of many colours that do proffer their honey unto the bees that flit ever busily about them. Meadows hath she, set in pleasant places, green at the foot of misty mountains, wherein be sparkling well-springs clear and bright, flowing forth with a gentle whispering ripple in shining streams that sing sweet lullaby unto them that lie upon their banks. Watered is she, moreover, by lakes and rivers wherein is much fish, and, besides the narrow sea of the Southern coast whereby men make voyage unto Gaul, by three noble rivers, Thames, to wit, Severn and Humber, the which she stretcheth forth as it were three arms whereby she taketh in the

MESTON TRAINING COLLEGE
MADRAS-14

MEADOWS SET IN PLEASANT PLACES.

traffic from oversea brought hither from every land in her fleets. By twice ten cities, moreover, and twice four, was she graced in days of old, whereof some with shattered walls in desolate places be now fallen into decay, whilst some, still whole, do contain churches of the saints with towers builded wondrous fair on high, wherein companies of religious, both men and women, do their service unto God after the traditions of the Christian faith. Lastly, it is inhabited of five peoples, Romans, to wit, Britons, Saxons, Picts and Scots.

From *The History of the Kings of Britain*, by
GEOFFREY OF MONMOUTH.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. Rewrite this passage in modern prose.

2. Make sentences with :

(*a*) To agree with ; to agree to ; to be tired of ; to be ready for ; to be responsible for.

(*b*) To be deficient in ; to arrive at ; to trespass on ; to long for.

(*c*) Preferable to ; to rejoice at ; suitable for ; to be vexed with ; to be vexed at.

(*d*) To differ from ; to disagree with ; to hint at ; to sin against ; to stand by.

3. (*a*) You have been in a railway accident. Send a telegram home.

(*b*) You are returning from the seaside when the motor-car breaks down. Send a telegram home.

(*c*) Send a telegram congratulating a friend on his success in an examination.

II. Grammar Exercises

4. Make a list of the participles found in the passage.

5. What is the force of the adjective *green* in each of the following sentences ?

(*a*) She hath *green* meadows set in pleasant places.
(*b*) Her meadows are *green.*
(*c*) When the sun rose, his light painted the meadows *green.*

6. Which words do those that are italicized qualify in ?—

(*a*) Heat me these irons *hot.*
(*b*) *Sweet* are the uses of adversity.
(*c*) Forests also hath she, *filled* with every manner of *wild* deer.
(*d*) The rudder of the ship broke *loose.*

IV

ON ENGLAND

We have met to-night to celebrate our country and our Patron Saint. It always seems to me no mere chance that, besides being the Patron Saint of England, St. George was the Patron Saint of the gallant sailors around the shores of the Adriatic, and that in his honour there exists one of the most beautiful chapels in Venice to-day. The Patron Saint of sailors is surely the most suitable Patron Saint for men of the English stock ; and I think to-night we might for a minute or two look at those characteristics, contradictory often, peculiar as we believe, in that great stock of which we are all members.

The Englishman is all right as long as he is content to be what God made him, an Englishman, but gets into trouble when he tries to be something else. There are chroniclers, or were chroniclers, who said it was the apeing of the French manners by our English ancestors that made us the prey of William the Norman, and led to our defeat at Hastings. Let that be a warning to us not to ape any foreign country. Let us be content to trust ourselves and to be ourselves.

Now, I always think that one of the most curious contradictions about the English stock is this : that while the criticism that is often made of us is not without an element of truth, and that is that as a

nation we are less open to the intellectual sense than the Latin races, yet though that may be a fact, there is no nation on earth that has had the same knack of producing geniuses. It is almost a characteristic of the English race ; there is hardly any line in which the nation has not produced geniuses ; and in a nation which many people might think restrained, unable to express itself, in this same nation you have a literature second to none that has ever existed in the world, and certainly in poetry supreme.

Then, for a more personal characteristic, we grumble, and we have always grumbled, but we never worry. Now, there is a very great truth in that, because there are foreign nations who worry but do not grumble. Grumbling is more superficial, leaves less of a mark on the character, and just as the English schoolboy, for his eternal salvation, is impervious to the receipt of learning, and by that means preserves his mental faculties further into middle age and old age than he otherwise would (and I may add that I attribute the possession of such faculties as I have to the fact that I did not overstrain them in youth), just as the Englishman has a mental reserve owing to that gift given him at his birth by St. George, so, by the absence of worry he keeps his nervous system sound and sane, with the result that in times of emergency the nervous system stands when the nervous system of other peoples breaks.

The Englishman is made for a time of crisis, and for

a time of emergency. He is serene in difficulties, but may seem to be indifferent when times are easy. He may not look ahead, he may not heed warnings, he may not prepare, but when he once starts he is persistent to the death, and he is ruthless in action. It is these gifts which have made the Englishman what he is, and that have enabled the Englishman to make England and the Empire what it is. . . . .

There is yet another point. I think the English people are at heart and in practice the kindest people in the world. With some faults on which I have touched, there is in England a profound sympathy for the under-dog. There is a brotherly and a neighbourly feeling which we see to a remarkable extent through all classes. There is a way of facing misfortunes with a cheerful face. It was shown to a marvellous degree in the war, and in spite of all that he said in criticism of his own people, Ruskin said one thing of immortal truth. He said: "The English laugh is the purest and truest in the metal that can be minted. And indeed only Heaven can know what the country owes to it." There is a profound truth in that. As long as people can laugh, they are preserved from the grosser vices of life, political and moral. And as long as they can laugh, they can face all the ills that fortune may bring upon them.

Then, in no nation more than the English is there a diversified individuality. We are a people of individuals, and a people of character. You may take the

writings of one of the greatest and one of the most English of writers, Charles Dickens, and you will find that practically all his characters are English. They are all different, and each of us that has gone through the world with his eyes open and his heart open, has met every one of Dickens's characters in some position or another in life. Let us see to it that we never allow our individuality as Englishmen to be steam-rollered. The preservation of the individuality of the Englishman is essential to the preservation of the type of the race, and if our differences are smoothed out and we lose that great gift, we shall lose at the same time our power. Uniformity of type is a bad thing. I regret very much myself the uniformity of speech. Time was, two centuries ago, when you could have told by his speech from what part of England every member of Parliament came. He spoke the speech of his fathers, and I regret that the dialects have gone; and I regret that by a process which for want of a better name we have agreed among ourselves to call education, we are drifting away from the language of the people and losing some of the best English words and phrases which have lasted in the country through centuries, to make us all talk one uniform and inexpressive language.

Now, I have very little more that I want to say to you to-night, but on an occasion like this I suppose there is no one who does not ask himself in his heart, and is a little shy of expressing it, what it is that

England stands for to him, and to her. And there comes into my mind a wonder as to what England may stand for in the minds of generations to come if our country goes on during the next generation as she has done in the last two, in seeing her fields converted into towns.

To me, England is the country, and the country is England. And when I ask myself what I mean by England, when I think of England when I am abroad, England comes to me through my various senses—through the ear, through the eye, and through certain imperishable scents. I will tell you what they are, and there may be those among you who feel as I do.

The sounds of England, the tinkle of the hammer on the anvil in the country smithy, the corncrake on a dewy morning, the sound of the scythe against the whetstone, and the sight of a plough team coming over the brow of a hill, the sight that has been seen in England since England was a land, and may be seen in England long after the Empire has perished, and every works in England has ceased to function, for centuries the one eternal sight of England. The wild anemones in the woods in April, the last load at night of hay being drawn down a lane as the twilight comes on, when you can scarcely distinguish the figures of the horses as they take it home to the farm, and above all, most subtle, most penetrating and most moving, the smell of wood smoke coming up in an autumn evening, or the smell of the scutch fires: that

wood smoke that our ancestors, tens of thousands of years ago, must have caught on the air when they were coming home with the result of the day's forage, when they were still nomads, and when they were still roaming the forests and the plains of the continent of Europe. These things strike down into the very depths of our nature, and touch chords that go back to the beginning of time and the human race, but they are chords that with every year of our life sound a deeper note in our innermost being.

These are the things that make England, and I grieve for it that they are not the childish inheritance of the majority of the people to-day in our country. They ought to be the inheritance of every child born into this country, but nothing can be more touching than to see how the working man and woman, after generations in the towns, will have their tiny bit of garden if they can, will go to gardens if they can, to look at something they have never seen as children, but which their ancestors knew and loved. The love of these things is innate and inherent in our people. It makes for that love of home, one of the strongest features of our race, and it is that that makes our race seek its new home in the Dominions overseas, where they have room to see things like this that they can no more see at home. It is that power of making homes, almost peculiar to our people, and it is one of the sources of their greatness. They go overseas, and they take with them what they learned at home : love

of justice, love of truth, and the broad humanity so characteristic of English people. It may well be that these traits on which we pride ourselves, which we hope to show and try to show in our own lives, may survive—survive among our people so long as they are a people—and I hope and believe this, that just as to-day, more than fifteen centuries since the last of those great Roman legionaries left England, we still speak of the Roman strength, and the Roman work, and the Roman character, so perhaps in the ten thousandth century, long after the empires of the world as we know them have fallen and others have risen and fallen, and risen and fallen again, the men who are then on the earth may yet speak of those characteristics which we prize as characteristics of the English, and that long after, maybe, the name of the country has passed away, wherever men are honourable and upright and persevering, lovers of home, of their brethren, of justice and of humanity, the men in the world of that day may say, " We still have among us the gifts of that great English race."

STANLEY BALDWIN.

EXERCISES

I

1. (*a*) St. George is called the Patron Saint of England. Name the Patron Saints of Scotland, Ireland, Wales, France, and any others you may know.

(*b*) " There is hardly any time in which the (English) nation has not produced geniuses." Give examples.

II. Composition Exercises

2. What does the speaker mean by the "under-dog"? Find out what you can about the following: Actæon's fifty dogs; to lead a cat-and-dog life; to lead a dog's life; "Is thy servant a dog, that he should do this thing?"; Dogs of war; "Dog doesn't eat dog"; A dog in the manger; Every dog has his day; Give a dog a bad name and hang him.

3. The orator uses various devices to add emphasis to his speech. Can you point out any of these devices in this speech?

III. Grammar Exercises

4. Rewrite in the negative:
   (*a*) Each of them had taken a stick.
   (*b*) All the members of the club were present.
   (*c*) Everything had been done.
   (*d*) Somebody was knocking at the door.
   (*e*) All is ready.
   (*f*) The wolf has been seen many a time since then.

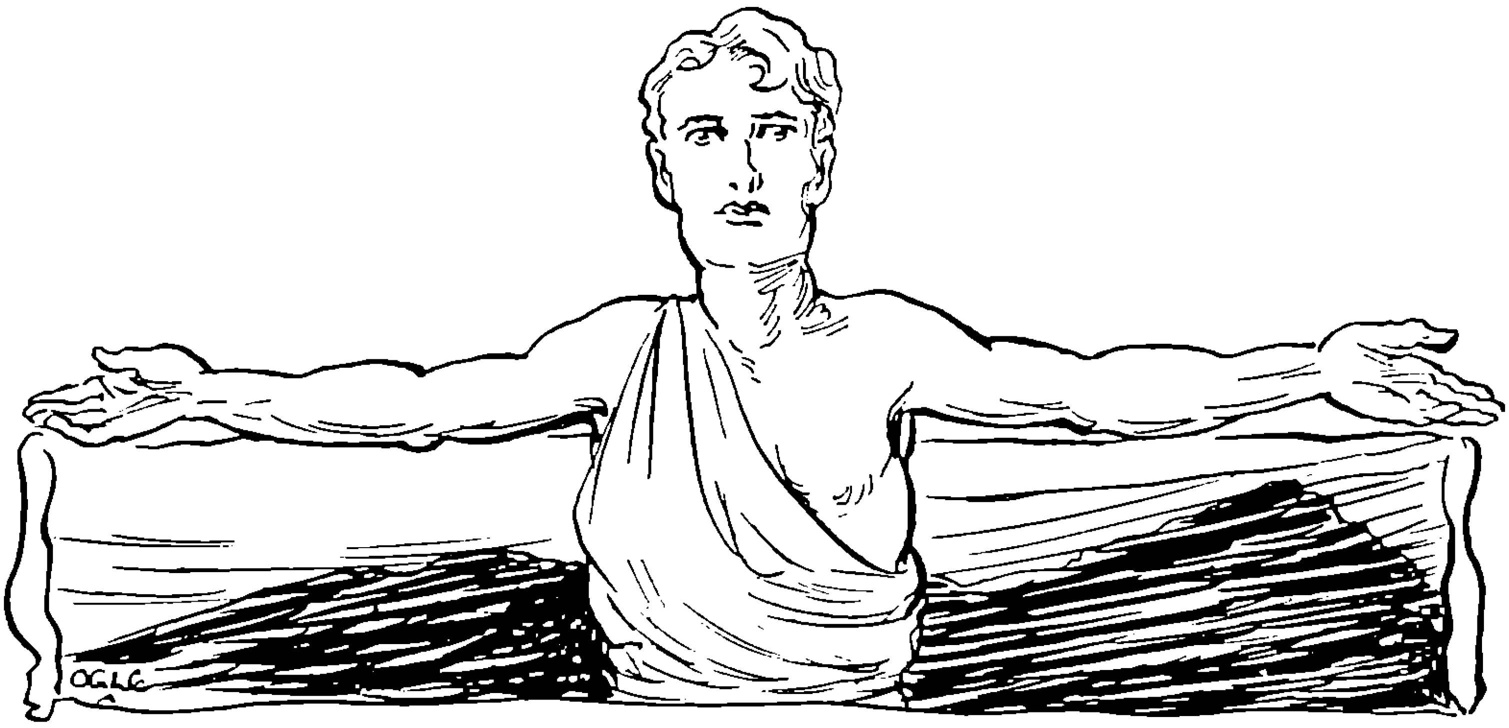
5. Give the comparative and superlative degrees of the following adjectives and adverbs: *able*, *good*, *quickly*, *much*, *lively*, *lucky*, *luckily*, *nearly*, *just*, *poor*, *ill*, *evil*, *open*, *red*, *reddish*, *extraordinary*, *faithful*.

6. Give the past tense, present participle, and past participle of the following verbs: *help*, *see*, *hurt*, *lend*, *swell*, *tell*, *smart*, *swim*, *swing*, *buy*, *guide*, *bury*, *go*, *wonder*, *celebrate*.

7. Make sentences (two for each word) using the following words, first as concrete nouns, and then as abstract nouns: *head*, *passage*, *standard*, *measure*, *craft*, *point*, *heart*.

V

THE LAST POEM



I vow to thee, my country,—all earthly things above—
Entire and whole and perfect, the service of my love,
The love that asks no questions ; the love that stands the test,
That lays upon the altar the dearest and the best :
The love that never falters ; the love that pays the price ;
The love that makes undaunted the final sacrifice.

And there's another country I've heard of long ago—
Most dear to them that love her, most great to them that know;

We may not count her armies, we may not see her king;
Her fortress is a faithful heart, her pride is suffering:
And soul by soul and silently her shining bounds increase,
And her ways are ways of gentleness, and all her paths are Peace.

SIR CECIL SPRING RICE.

VI

JOHN HAMPDEN

THE DEATH OF JOHN HAMPDEN.

He was a gentleman of a good family in Buckinghamshire, and born to a fair fortune, and of a most civil and affable deportment. In his entrance into the world he indulged to himself all the license in sport and exercises and company which was used by men of the most jolly conversation. Afterwards he retired to a more reserved and melancholic society, yet preserving his own natural cheerfulness and vivacity, and above all, a flowing courtesy to all men. . . . He was rather of

reputation in his own country than of public discourse or fame in the kingdom before the business of Ship-money ; but then he grew the argument of all tongues, every man enquiring who and what he was that durst at his own charge support the liberty and property of the kingdom, and secure his country from being made a prey to the Court. His carriage throughout that agitation was with that rare temper and modesty that they who watched him narrowly to find some advantage against his person, to make him less resolute in his course, were compelled to give him a just testimony. And the judgment that was given against him infinitely more advanced him than the reverse for which it was given. When the Parliament began (being returned knight of the shire for the county where he lived) the eyes of all men were fixed on him as their *Patriae Pater*, and the pilot that must steer their vessel through the tempests and rocks which threatened it. And I am persuaded his power and interest at that time was greater to do good or hurt than any man's in the kingdom, or than any man of his rank hath had in any time : for his reputation of honesty was universal, and his affections seemed so publicly guided that no corrupt or private ends could turn them.

He was of that rare affability and temper in debate, and of that seeming humility and submission of judgment, as if he brought no opinions with him, but a desire of information and instruction : yet he had

so subtle a way of interrogating, and under the notion of doubts insinuating his objections, that he left his opinions with those from whom he pretended to learn and receive them. And even with them who were able to preserve themselves from his infusions, and deemed those opinions to be fixed in him with which they could not comply, he always left the character of an ingenious and conscientious person. He was indeed a very wise man, and of great parts, and possessed with the most absolute spirit of popularity, that is, the most absolute faculties to govern the people, of any man I ever knew.

After he was amongst those members accused by the king of high treason, he was much altered, his nature and carriage seeming much fiercer than it did before. And without question, when he first drew the sword he threw away the scabbard ; for he passionately opposed the overture made by the king for a treaty from Nottingham, and, as eminently, any expedients that might have produced an accommodation in this that was at Oxford ; and was principally relied on to prevent any infusions which might be made unto the Earl of Essex towards peace, or to render them ineffectual if they were made ; and was indeed much more relied on by that party than the general himself. In the first entrance into the troubles, he undertook the command of a regiment of foot, and performed the duty of a colonel on all occasions most punctually. He was very temperate in

diet, and a supreme governor over all his passions and affections, and had thereby a great power over other men's. He was of an industry and vigilance not to be tired out or wearied by the most laborious, and of parts not to be imposed upon by the most subtle or sharp; and of a personal courage equal to his best parts; so that he was an enemy not to be wished wherever he might have been made a friend and as much to be apprehended where he was so as any man could deserve to be. And therefore his death was no less congratulated on the one party than it was condoled on the other. In a word, he had a head to contrive, and a tongue to persuade, and a hand to execute, any mischieve.

From *The History of the Rebellion*, by LORD CLARENDON.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. What is meant by: affable deportment; carriage; Patriae Pater; of great parts?

2. "A regiment of *foot*." Give other examples of the use of the word "foot" in a figurative sense. Do the same for the word "hand," e.g. "The children were quite out of hand."

3. Make sentences containing the following phrases: The benefactors of mankind; a dishonourable practice; a mischievous error; difficult to determine; eminent for private virtue; the most memorable battle-fields of history; at all costs.

II. Grammar Exercises

4. Name the kind of clause to which each of those in italics belongs :

(*a*) Every man enquired *who he was.*

(*b*) The judgment *that was given against him* advanced him infinitely.

(*c*) *When the Parliament began*, the eyes of all men were fixed on him.

(*d*) He seemed to be the pilot *that must steer their vessel through the tempests and rocks.*

(*e*) *What was below this* could not be seen by me.

5. Separate the following words into stem and affix, or affixes : *cheerfulness, kingdom, business, resolute, ineffectual, passionately.*

6. (*a*) Give the adjectives made from the same stem as the following nouns : *vivacity, nature, property, temper.*

(*b*) Give the nouns made from the same stem as the following verbs : *carry, argue, rely, contrive.*

(*c*) Give the verbs made from the same stem as the following nouns : *conversation, entrance, exercise, gold.*

(*d*) Make verbs from the following words : *civil, public, trench, service.*

7. Copy out the adverb phrases in the following sentences :

(*a*) Each moment I felt my doubt to be increasing.

(*b*) I had fought against the feeling hitherto.

(*c*) I found myself enshrouded by a cold, thin vapour, which prevented my seeing more than a very few yards in front of me.

VII

THE DUKE OF MARLBOROUGH

It is impossible to quit this subject without a few words on the great man who revived for England the ancient glory of Crecy, Poitiers, and Agincourt, the greatest, in the Duke of Wellington's words, who ever appeared at the head of a British army. There are certain passages in his life which make it difficult sometimes to withhold from him hard names ; but allowance should be made for one who was born in revolution, nurtured in a court of corruption, and matured in fresh revolution. Wellington himself admitted that he never understood the characters of that period, nor exercised due charity towards them, till he had observed the effects of the French Revolution on the minds and consciences of French statesmen and marshals. Marlborough's fall was brought about by a faction, and his fame has remained ever since a prey to the tender mercies of a faction. But the prejudices of a partisan are but a sorry standard for the measure of one whose transcendent ability as a general, a statesman, a diplomatist, and an administrator, guided not only England, but Europe through the War of the Spanish Succession, and delivered them safe for a whole generation from the craft and ambition of France.

Regarding him as a general, his fame is assured as

MARLBOROUGH AT RAMILLIES.

one of the great captains of all time ; and it would not become a civilian to add a word to the eulogy of great soldiers who alone can comprehend the full measure of his greatness. Yet one or two small points are worthy of attention over and above the reforms which were introduced by him in all three arms of the service. First, and perhaps most important, is the blow struck by Marlborough against the whole system, so much favoured by the French, of passive campaigns. It was not, thanks to Dutch deputies and German princelets, as effective as it should have been, but it still marked a step forward in the art of war. It must never be forgotten that we possess only the wreck of many of Marlborough's finest combinations, shattered, just as they were entering port, against the rocks of Dutch stupidity and German conceit. Next, there is a great deal said and written in these days about night-marches and the future that lies before them. It is well to glance also at the past that they have behind them, and to mark with what frequency, with what consummate skill, and with what unvarying success they were employed under far greater than modern difficulties by Marlborough.

Next let it be observed how thoroughly he understood the British soldier. He took care to feed him well, to pay him regularly, to give him plenty of work, and to keep him under the strictest discipline ; and with all this he cherished a genial feeling for the

men, which showed itself not only in strictest injunctions to watch over their comfort, but in acts of personal kindness kindly bestowed. The magic of his personality made itself felt among his men far beyond the scope of mere military duty. His soldiers, as the Recruiting Acts can testify, were for the most part the scum of the nation. Yet they not only marched and fought with a steadiness beyond all praise, but actually became reformed characters and left the army sober, self-respecting men. Marlborough, despite his lapses into treachery as a politician, was a man of peculiar sensitiveness and delicacy. He had a profound distaste for licentiousness either in language or in action, and he contrived to instil a like distaste into his army. His force did not swear terribly in Flanders, as King William's before it, and although the annual supply of recruits brought with it necessarily an annual infusion of crime, yet the moral tone of the army was singularly high. Marlborough's nature was not of the hard, unbending temper of Wellington's. The Iron Duke had a heart so steeled by strong sense, duty and discipline that it but rarely sought relief in a burst of. passionate emotion. Marlborough was cast in a very different mould. He too, like Wellington, was endowed with a strong common sense that in itself amounted to genius, and possessed in the most trying moments a serenity and calm that was almost miraculous. But there was no coldness in his serenity, nothing impassive in his calm. He was sensitive

to a fault; and though his temper might remain unchangeably sweet and his speech unalterably placid and courteous, his face would betray the anxiety and worry which his tongue had power to conceal. With such a temperament there was a bond of humanity between him and his men that was lacking in Wellington. Great as Wellington was, the Iron Duke's army could never have nicknamed him the Old Corporal.

The epithet corporal suggests comparison with the Little Corporal, who performed such marvels with the French army. Undoubtedly the name was in both cases a mark of the boundless confidence and devotion which the two men could evoke from their troops, and which they could turn to such splendid account in their operations. Marlborough could make believe that he was intending to throw away his entire army, and yet be sure of its loyalty: Napoleon could throw away whole hosts, desert them, and still command the unaltered trust of a new levy. In both the personal fascination was an extraordinary power: but here the resemblance ends. Napoleon, for all his theatrical tricks, had no heart nor tenderness in him, and could not bear the intoxication of success. Marlborough never suffered triumph to turn his head, to diminish his generosity towards enemies, to tempt him from the path of sound military practice, or to obscure his unerring insight into the heart of things. True, his plans were opposed as too adventurous by Eugene,

first when he wished to hasten the battle of Malplaquet, and secondly when he would have masked Lille and advanced straight into France ; but even assuming, as is by no means certain, that in both instances Eugene was right, there is no parallel here to the gambling spirit which pervaded the latter enterprises of Napoleon. "Marlborough," said Wellington, "was remarkable for his clear, cool, steady understanding," and the quality was one which never deserted him. Nevertheless, if there be one attribute which should be chosen as supremely characteristic of the man, it is that which William Pitt selected as the first requisite of a statesman—patience ; "patience," as the Duke himself once wrote to Godolphin, "which can overcome all things" ; patience which, as may be seen in a hundred passages during the war, was possessed by him in such measure that it appears almost godlike. These are the qualities which mark the sanity of true genius, that distinguish a Milton from a Shelley, a Nelson from a Dundonald, and a Marlborough from a Peterborough ; and it is in virtue of these, indicating as they do the perfect balance of transcendent ability, that Marlborough takes rank with the mightiest of England's sons, with Shakespeare, with Bacon, and with Newton, as "the greatest statesman and the greatest general that this country or any other country has produced."

From *A History of the British Army*, by SIR JOHN FORTESCUE.

EXERCISES

1. Who were "The Old Corporal" and "The Little Corporal"?

2. Name one of each of the following: A general, a statesman, a diplomatist, an administrator.

I. Composition Exercises

3. Use in sentences: "To make allowance for; to exercise charity; to be a prey to; over and above; with consummate skill; for the most part; sensitive to a fault.

4. Which word or words below are so disconnected from the sentence that they can be removed without it becoming ungrammatical?—

(*a*) This, of course, was exactly what was wanted.

(*b*) It must not be thought that the Pacific Ocean is always calm; indeed, it is at times subject to violent storms.

(*c*) A bough having snapped, the boy fell and broke his leg.

(*d*) Joking apart, poverty is a state of life to be avoided.

(*e*) The dahlia, unfortunately, is not so hardy as to withstand frost.

II. Grammar Exercises

5. "It is impossible to quit this subject without a few words on the great man who revived for England the ancient glory of Crecy, Poitiers, and Agincourt, the greatest, in the Duke of Wellington's words, who ever appeared at the head of a British army." Classify the nouns in this sentence into proper and common.

6. Classify the nouns in the following as concrete or abstract:

The guide was bewildered. He walked his legs off, nearly, hunting up extraordinary things, and exhausted all his ingenuity upon us, but it was a failure; we never showed any interest in anything. He had reserved what he considered to be his greatest wonder till the last—a royal Egyptian mummy, the best preserved in the world perhaps.

VIII

GEORGE STEPHENSON

THE whole secret of Mr. Stephenson's success in life was his careful improvement of time, which is the rock out of which fortunes are carved and great characters formed. He believed in genius to the extent that Buffon did when he said that "patience is genius"; or as some other thinker put it, when he defined genius to be the power of making efforts. But he never would have it that he was a genius, or that he had done anything which other men, equally laborious and persevering as himself, could not have accomplished. He repeatedly said to the young men about him: "Do as I have done—persevere!" He perfected the locomotive, by always working at it and always thinking about it.

Every step of advance which he made was conquered by patient labour. When an engineman, he systematically took his engine to pieces on Saturday

afternoons, while the works were at a stand, for the purpose of cleaning it thoroughly, and "gaining insight." He thus gradually mastered the mechanism of the steam-engine, so that, when opportunity offered, he was enabled to improve it, and to make it work when its own maker was baffled. He practically studied hydraulics in the same plodding way, when acting as plugman; and when all the local pump doctors at Killingworth were in despair, he stepped in, and successfully applied the knowledge which he had so laboriously gained. A man of such a temper and purpose could not but succeed in life.

His long labour to invent the perpetual motion was not lost. The attempt did him good, stimulating his inventiveness and mechanical ingenuity. He afterwards used to lament this loss of time, and said that if he had enjoyed the opportunity which young men of this day have, of knowing from books what others had done before them, he would have been spared much labour and mortification. Sometimes he thought he had hit upon discoveries which he afterwards found were but old fallacies long since exploded. Yet the very effort to overcome difficulty was of itself an education. By wrestling with it, he strengthened his judgment and sharpened his skill. Being in earnest in his struggle, he was compelled to consider the subject in all its relations; and this would not suffer him to be superficial. He thus acquired practical ability through his steadfast efforts even after the impracticable.

Whether working as a brakesman or an engineer, his mind was always full of the work in hand. He gave himself thoroughly up to it. Like the painter, he might say that he had become great by neglecting nothing. Whatever he was engaged upon, he was as careful of the details as if each were itself the whole. He did all thoroughly and honestly. There was no scamping with him. When a workman, he put his brains and labour into his work ; and when a master, he put his conscience and character into it. He would have no slop work executed merely for the sake of profit. The materials must be as genuine as the workmanship was skilful. The structures which he designed and executed were distinguished for their thoroughness and solidity ; his locomotives were famous for their durability and excellent working qualities. The engines which he sent to the United States in 1832 are still (1857) in good condition ; and even the engines built by him for the Killingworth colliery, upwards of thirty years ago, are working steadily there to this day. All his work was honest, representing the actual character of the man.

The battle which Mr. Stephenson fought for the locomotive would have discouraged most other men ; but it only served to bring into prominence that energy and determination which formed the backbone of his character. "I have fought," said he, "for the locomotive single-handed for nearly twenty years, having no engineer to help me until I had

reared engineers under my own care." The leading engineers of the day were against him, without exception ; yet he did not despair. He had laid hold of a great idea, and he stuck by it ; his mind was locked and bolted to the results. "I put up," he says, "with every rebuff, *determined* not to be put down." When the use of his locomotive on the Liverpool and Manchester Line was reported against, and the employment of fixed engines recommended instead, Mr. Stephenson implored the directors, who were no engineers, only to afford a fair opportunity for a trial of the locomotive. Their common sense came to his rescue. They had immense confidence in that Newcastle engine-wright. He had already made steadfast friends of several of the most influential men amongst them, who valued his manly uprightness and integrity, and were strongly disposed to believe in him, though all the engineering world stood on the one side, and he alone on the other. His patient purpose, not less than his intense earnestness, carried them away. They adopted his recommendation, and offered a prize of £500 for the best locomotive. Though many proclaimed the Liverpool men to be as great maniacs as Stephenson, yet the result proved the practical sagacity of the directors and the skill of their engineer ; but it was the determined purpose of the latter which secured the triumph of the locomotive. His resolution, founded on sound convictions, was the precursor of what he eventually achieved ;

and his intense anticipation was but the true presentiment of what he was afterwards found capable of accomplishing.

He was ready to turn his hand to anything—shoes and clocks, railways and locomotives. He contrived his safety-lamp with the object of saving pitmen's lives, and perilled his own in testing it. Whatever work was nearest him, he turned to and did it. With him to resolve was to do. Many men knew far more than he ; but none was more ready forthwith to apply what he did know to practical purposes. . . .

Mr. Stephenson, though a thrifty and frugal man, was essentially unsordid. His rugged path in early life made him careful of his resources. He never saved to hoard, but saved for a purpose, such as the maintenance of his parents or the education of his son. In later years, he became a prosperous and even a wealthy man ; but riches never closed his heart, nor stole away the elasticity of his soul. He enjoyed life cheerfully, because hopefully. When he entered upon a commercial enterprise, whether for others or for himself, he looked carefully at the ways and means. Unless they would pay, he held back. "He would have nothing to do," he declared, "with stock-jobbing speculations." His refusal to sell his name to the schemes of the railway mania, his survey of the Spanish lines without remuneration, his offer to postpone his claim for payment from a poor company until their affairs became more prosperous, are instances of

the unsordid spirit in which he acted. "No mere pecuniary interest," it has been well said, "could have led George Stephenson to persevere in his onward course from boyhood, when he toiled as a slave to the great steam-engine of the mine, up to the period when he had forced his way through all the difficulties, natural and artificial, of the Manchester and Liverpool way. No mere calculation of percentages and dividends wrought this work. It was the high heroic soul, the strong English spirit, the magnificent will, the indomitable energy, that accomplished this world-enduring labour."

Another marked feature in Mr. Stephenson's character was his patience. Notwithstanding the strength of his convictions as to the great uses to which the locomotive might be applied, he waited long and patiently for the opportunity of bringing it into notice; and for years after he had completed an efficient engine he went on quietly devoting himself to the ordinary work of the colliery. He made no noise nor stir about his locomotive, but allowed another to take credit for the experiments on velocity and friction made with it by himself upon the Killingworth railroad. . . .

In his deportment, Mr. Stephenson was simple, modest, and unassuming, but always manly. He was frank and social in spirit. When a humble workman, he had carefully preserved his sense of self-respect. His companions looked up to him, and his example was

worth even more to many of them than books or schools. His devoted love of knowledge made his poverty respectable, and adorned his humble calling. When he rose to a more elevated station, and associated with men of the highest position and influence in Britain, he took his place amongst them with perfect self-possession. They wondered at the quiet ease and simple dignity of his deportment ; and men in the best ranks of life have said of him that "He was one of Nature's gentlemen." . . .

Mr. Stephenson's close observation of nature provided him with a fulness of information on many subjects which often appeared surprising to those who had devoted to them a special study. This rendered him a highly instructive and amusing companion at all times. Thus, the accuracy of his knowledge of birds came out in a curious way at a convivial meeting of railway men in London. The engineers and railway directors present knew each other as railway men and nothing more. The talk had been all of railways and railway politics. Mr. Stephenson was a great talker on these subjects, and was generally allowed, from the interest of his conversation and the extent of his experience, to take the lead. At length, one of the party broke in with—" Come now, Stephenson, we have had nothing but railways ; cannot we have a change, and try if we can talk about something else ?" " Well," said Mr. Stephenson, " I'll give you a wide range of subjects ; what shall it be about ? " " Say

birds' nests !" rejoined the other, who prided himself on his special knowledge of this subject. "Then birds' nests be it." A long and animated conversation ensued. The colour and number of the birds' eggs, the period of their incubation, the materials employed by them for the walls and linings of their nests, were described by him so vividly, and illustrated by such graphic anecdotes, that one of the party remarked that, if George Stephenson had not been the greatest engineer of his day, he might have been one of the greatest naturalists.

It is Goethe, we believe, who has said that no man ever receives a new idea, at variance with his preconceived notions, after forty. But this observation, though it may be generally, is not invariably true. There are many great minds which never close. Mr. Stephenson, to the last, was open to the reception of new ideas, new facts, new theories. He was a late learner ; but he went on learning to the end.

Abbreviated from *The Life of George Stephenson*,
by SAMUEL SMILES.

EXERCISES

I

1. From any works of reference find out what you can about Buffon (1707–1788) and Goethe (1749–1832).

2. " He never would have it that he was a genius." What is your idea of a " genius " ?

II. Composition Exercises

3. The opening sentence contains a *metaphor* : " His careful im-

provement of time, which is *the rock out of which fortunes are carved* and great characters formed." Find other examples from the text.

4. Use in sentences : *Systematically ; to take to pieces ; mechanism ; hydraulics ; mechanical ingenuity ; mortification ; fallacies ; superficial; solidity ; influential ; integrity ; maniacs ; precursor ; presentiment ; trait ; chivalrous protection.*

5. Use in sentences :

(*a*) To lay to heart ; to lose heart ; to put in a word ; to run to seed ; in full swing.

(*b*) To tide over ; to own up ; to make light of ; to break the ice.

(*c*) To fight shy of ; a feather in one's cap ; a black sheep ; to fall flat.

(*d*) Over head and ears ; part and parcel ; by rights ; spick and span ; for the time being.

III. Grammar Exercises

6. To what part of speech does each of the italicized words belong in ?—

(*a*) The rain and sun *dress* the fields in gay colours.
(*b*) Be careful of your *dress* and of your behaviour.
(*c*) *Heat* me these irons hot.
(*d*) A shield against the summer's *heat.*
(*e*) We may expect to *experience* a *heat* wave.
(*f*) Even the dull can learn by *experience.*
(*g*) Forests also hath she, filled with every manner of *wild* deer.
(*h*) The creatures of the *wild.*

7. Copy out the adverb phrases in the following sentences, naming the kind to which each belongs.

(*a*) In a little time I fell into a really refreshing sleep, which lasted till broad daylight.

(*b*) After a slow but steady climb of between three and four hours, during which I met with no serious hindrance, I found myself upon a tableland and close to a glacier which I recognized as marking the summit of the pass.

(*c*) The mountain upon my master's sheep-run was a crowded thoroughfare in comparison with this sombre, sullen place.

IX

LET US NOW PRAISE FAMOUS MEN

LET us now praise famous men, and our fathers that begat us.

The Lord hath wrought great glory by them through His great power from the beginning.

Such as did bear rule in their kingdoms, men renowned for their power, giving counsel by their understanding, and declaring prophecies :

Leaders of the people by their counsels, and by their knowledge of learning meet for the people, wise and eloquent in their instructions :

Such as found out musical tunes, and recited verses in writing :

Rich men furnished with ability, living peaceably in their habitations :

All these were honoured in their generations, and were the glory of their times.

There be of them, that have left a name behind them, that their praises might be reported.

And some there be, which have no memorial ; who are perished, as though they had never been ; and are become as though they had never been born ; and their children after them.

But these were merciful men, whose righteousness hath not been forgotten.

With their seed shall continually remain a good inheritance, and their children are within the covenant.

Their seed standeth fast, and their children for their sakes.

Their seed shall remain for ever, and their glory shall not be blotted out.

Their bodies are buried in peace ; but their name liveth for evermore.

Ecclesiasticus, Chapter Forty-four.

EXERCISES

1. Name four books of the Old Testament, the New Testament, and the Apocrypha.

2. Find from works of reference particulars of the Septuagint and the Vulgate.

3. What is an Epitaph ? Which of the sentences in this extract would form a suitable epitaph ?

X

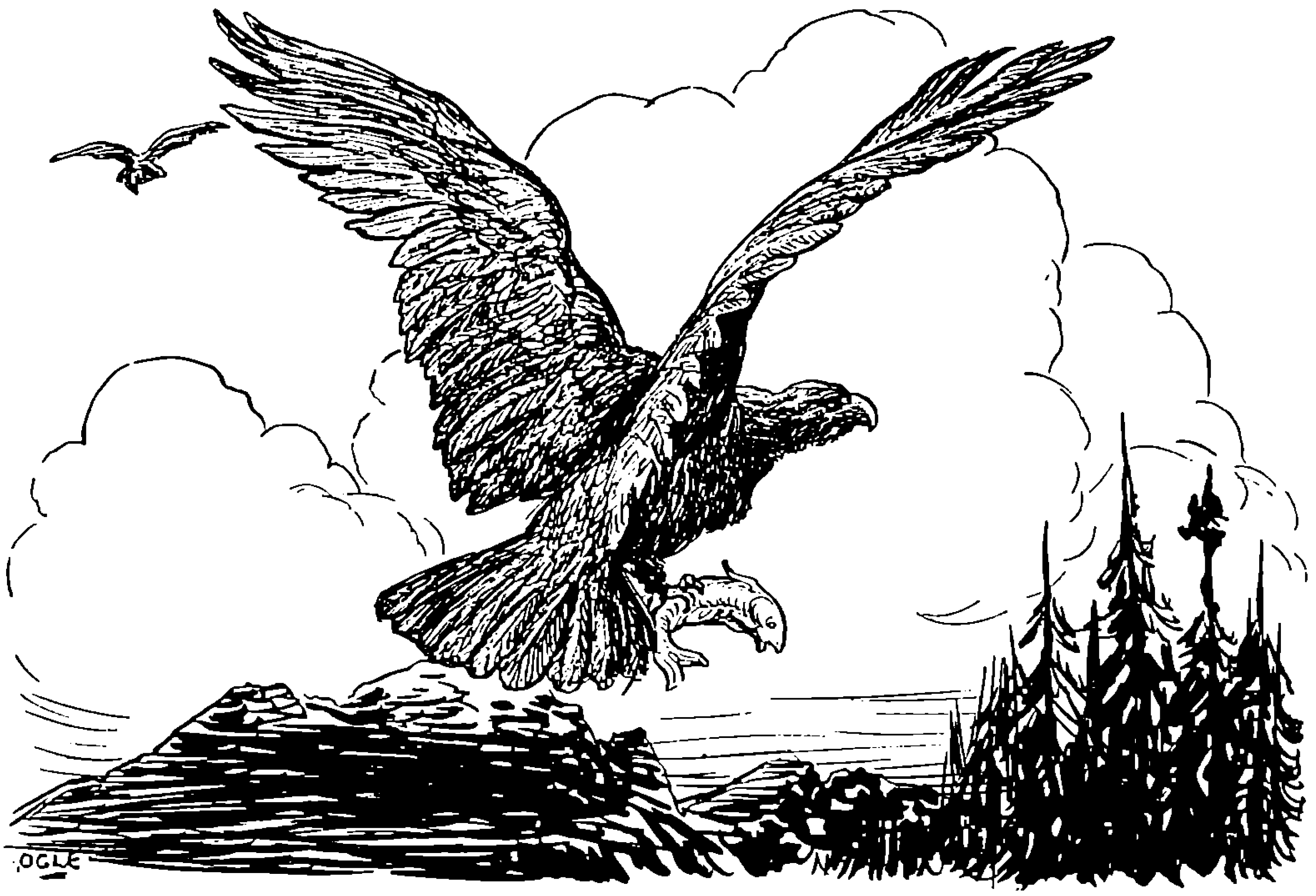
THE BALD EAGLE

The celebrated cataract of Niagara is a noted place of resort for the bald eagle, as well on account of the fish procured there, as for the numerous carcasses of squirrels, deer, bears, and various other animals that, in their attempts to cross the river above the falls, have been dragged into the current, and precipitated down that tremendous gulf, where, among the rocks that bound the rapids below, they furnish a rich repast for the vulture, the raven, and the bald eagle, the subject of the present account.

This bird has been long known to naturalists, being common to both continents, and occasionally met with from a very high northern latitude to the borders of the torrid zone, but chiefly in the vicinity of the sea, and along the shores and cliffs of our lakes and large rivers. Formed by nature for braving the severest cold, feeding equally on the produce of the sea and of the land, possessing powers of flight capable of outstripping even the tempests themselves, unawed by anything but man, and, from the ethereal heights to which he soars, looking abroad at one glance on an immeasurable expanse of forests, fields, lakes, and ocean, deep below him, he appears indifferent to the little localities of change of seasons, as in a few minutes he can pass from summer to winter, from the lower to

the higher regions of the atmosphere, the abode of eternal cold, and thence descend at will to the torrid or the arctic regions of the earth. He is, therefore, found at all seasons in the countries he inhabits ; but prefers such places as have been mentioned above from the great partiality he has for fish.

In procuring these, he displays, in a very singular manner, the genius and energy of his character, which is fierce, contemplative, daring, and tyrannical ; attributes not exerted but on particular occasions, but when put forth, overpowering all opposition. Elevated on the high dead limb of some gigantic tree that commands a wide view of the neighbouring shore and ocean, he seems calmly to contemplate the motions of the various feathered tribes that pursue their busy avocations below ; the snow-white gulls slowly winnowing the air ; the busy tringæ coursing along the sands ; trains of ducks streaming over the surface; silent and watchful cranes intent and wading ; clamorous crows ; and all the winged multitudes that subsist by the bounty of this vast liquid magazine of nature. High over all these hovers one whose action instantly arrests his whole attention. By his wide curvature of wing, and sudden suspension in air, he knows him to be the fish-hawk, settling over some devoted victim of the deep. His eye kindles at the sight, and balancing himself with half-opened wings on the branch, he watches the result. Down, rapid as an arrow from heaven, descends the distant object



of his attention, the roar of its wings reaching the ear as it disappears in the deep, making the surges foam around. At this moment the eager looks of the eagle are all ardour ; and, levelling his neck for flight, he sees the fish-hawk once more emerge, struggling with his prey, and mounting in the air with screams of exultation. These are the signal for our hero, who, launching into the air, instantly gives chase, and soon gains on the fish-hawk ; each exerts his utmost to mount above the other, displaying in these *rencontres* the most elegant and sublime aerial evolutions.

The unencumbered eagle rapidly advances, and is just on the point of reaching his opponent, when, with a sudden scream, probably of despair and honest execration, the latter drops his fish : the eagle, poising

himself for a moment, as if to take a more certain aim, descends like a whirlwind, snatches it in his grasp ere it reaches the water, and bears his ill-gotten booty silently away to the woods.

From *The American Ornithology*, by ALEXANDER WILSON.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. Supply words similar in meaning to those given in the text, and judge whether the passage is made weaker : *precipitated*, *unawed*, *outstripping*, *ethereal*, *immeasurable*, *snow-white*, *winnowing*, *coursing*, *trains*, *silent and watchful cranes*, *intent and wading*, *clamorous*, *kindles*, *ardour*, *unencumbered*, *ill-gotten booty.*

2. Find from the text examples of : Simile, Metaphor, Inversion.

3. Explain the difference between *celebrated* and *notorious*, *attempt* and *trial*, *various* and *varied*, *current* and *stream*, *furnish* and *provide*, *occasion* and *opportunity*, *singular* and *remarkable*, *signal* and *sign*, *discover* and *invent.*

II. Grammar Exercises

4. In the first sentence of the extract point out :

(*a*) The subject ; (*b*) the principal verb ; (*c*) the simple predicate ; (*d*) the enlargements of the predicate.

5. Combine the following sentences by the use of participles :

(*a*) The bald eagle is formed by nature for braving the severest cold. He feeds equally on the produce of the sea and of the land. He possesses powers of flight capable of outstripping even the tempests themselves. He soars to the ethereal heights. He can pass from summer to winter.

(*b*) David Livingstone was born with no social advantages. He possessed no prospects. He was backed by no powerful influence. He hewed his way through the world.

XI

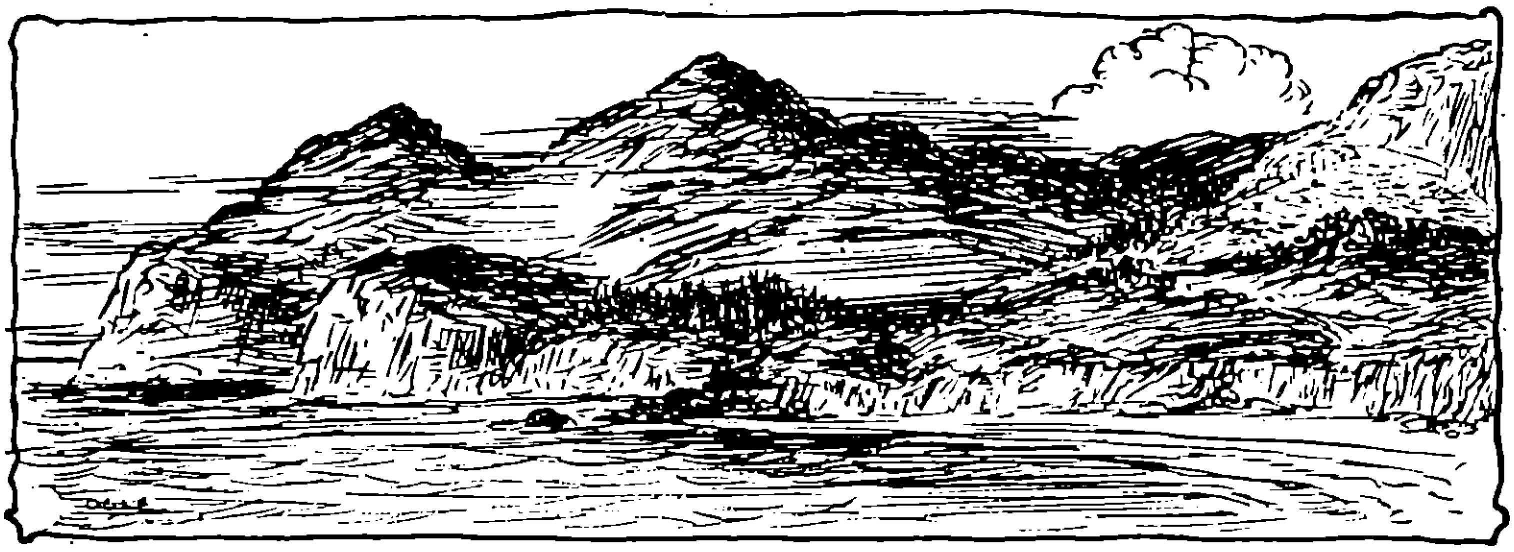
THE BLACK VULTURE

Aloof upon the day's immeasured dome
He holds unshared the silence of the sky.
Far down his bleak, relentless eyes descry
The eagle's empire and the falcon's home—
Far down the galleons of sunset roam ;
His hazards on the sea of morning lie ;
Serene, he hears the broken tempest sigh
Where cold sierras gleam like scattered foam.
And least of all he holds the human race,
Unwitting now that envious men prepare
To make their dream and its fulfilment one,
When, poised above the cauldrons of the storm,
Their hearts, contemptuous of death, shall dare
His roads between the thunder and the sun.

GEORGE STERLING.

XII

THE MOUNTAINS AND THE SEA



I HAVE lived by the sea-shore and by the mountains. —No, I am not going to say which is best. The one where your place is is the best for you. But this difference there is: you can domesticate mountains, but the sea is *fera natura.* You may have a hut, or know the owner of one, on the mountain-side; you see a light half-way up its ascent in the evening, and you know there is a home, and you might share it. You have noted certain trees, perhaps; you know the particular zone where the hemlocks look so black in October, when the maples and beeches have faded. All its reliefs and intaglios have electrotyped themselves in the medallions that hang round the walls of your memory's chamber.—The sea remembers nothing. It is feline. It licks your feet,—its huge flanks purr very pleasantly for you; but it will crack your

bones and eat you, for all that, and wipe the crimsoned foam from its jaws as if nothing had happened. The mountains give their lost children berries and water ; the sea mocks their thirst and lets them die. The mountains have a grand, stupid, lovable tranquillity ; the sea has a fascinating, treacherous intelligence. The mountains lie about like huge ruminants, their broad backs awful to look upon, but safe to handle. The sea smooths its silver scales until you cannot see their joints,—but their shining is that of a snake's belly, after all.—In deeper suggestiveness I find as great a difference. The mountains dwarf mankind and foreshorten the procession of its long generations. The sea drowns out humanity and time ; it has no sympathy with either ; for it belongs to eternity, and of that it sings its monotonous song for ever and ever.

From *The Autocrat of the Breakfast-Table*, by
OLIVER WENDELL HOLMES.

EXERCISES

1. Find in a dictionary the meanings of these words : *domesticate*, *zone*, *relief*, *intaglio*, *electrotype*, *medallion*, *feline*, *ruminant*, *foreshorten*, *fascinating*.

2. What does the author mean by ?—

(*a*) The medallions that hang round the walls of your memory's chamber.

(*b*) The sea licks your feet.

(*c*) The sea smooths its silver scales.

(*d*) The mountains dwarf mankind.

XIII

TRUTH AND ERROR

Did you never, in walking in the fields, come across a large flat stone, which had lain, nobody knows how long, just where you found it, with the grass forming a little hedge, as it were, all round it, close to its edges,—and have you not, in obedience to a kind of feeling that told you it had been lying there long enough, insinuated your stick or your foot or your fingers under its edge and turned it over as a housewife turns a cake, when she says to herself, "It's done brown enough by this time"? What an odd revelation, and what an unforeseen and unpleasant surprise to a small community, the very existence of which you had not suspected, until the sudden dismay and scattering among its members produced by your turning the old stone over! Blades of grass flattened down, colourless, matted together, as if they had been bleached and ironed; hideous crawling creatures, some of them coleopterous or horny-shelled,—turtle-bugs one wants to call them; some of them softer, but cunningly spread out and compressed like Lepine watches; (Nature never loses a crack or a crevice, mind you, or a joint in a tavern bedstead, but she always has one of her flat-pattern live timekeepers to slide into it;) black, glossy crickets, with their long filaments sticking out like the whips of four-horse stage-coaches; motion-

less, slug-like creatures, young larvæ, perhaps more horrible in their pulpy stillness than even in the infernal wriggle of maturity! But no sooner is the stone and the wholesome light of day let upon this compressed and blinded community of creeping things, than all of them which enjoy the luxury of legs—and some of them have a good many—rush round wildly, butting each other and everything in their way, and end in a general stampede for underground retreats from the region poisoned by sunshine. *Next year* you will find the grass growing tall and green where the stone lay; the ground-bird builds her nest where the beetle had its hole; the dandelion and the buttercup are growing there, and the broad fans of insect-angels open and shut over their golden disks, as the rhythmic waves of blissful consciousness pulsate through their glorified being.

—The young fellow whom they call John saw fit to say, in his very familiar way,—at which I do not choose to take offence, but which I sometimes think it necessary to repress,—that I was coming it rather strong on the butterflies.

No, I replied; there is meaning in each of those images,—the butterfly as well as the others. The stone is ancient error. The grass is human nature borne down and bleached of all its colour by it. The shapes which are found beneath are the crafty beings that thrive in darkness, and the weaker organisms kept helpless by it. He who turns the stone over is who-

THE BROAD FANS OF INSECT-ANGELS.

ever puts the staff of truth to the old lying incubus, no matter whether he do it with a serious face or a laughing one. The next year stands for the coming time. Then shall the nature which had lain blanched and broken rise in its full stature and native hues in the sunshine. Then shall God's minstrels build their nests in the hearts of a new-born humanity. Then shall beauty—Divinity taking outlines and colour—light upon the souls of men as the butterfly, image of the beatified spirit rising from the dust, soars from the shell that held a poor grub, which would never have found wings had not the stone been lifted.

You never need think you can turn over any old

falsehood without a terrible squirming and scattering of the horrid little population that dwells under it.

From *The Autocrat of the Breakfast-Table*, by
OLIVER WENDELL HOLMES.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. This passage is a very clever parable, in which the author has very skilfully brought out the meaning of each image. Set them out in parallel columns thus :

The Stone = Ancient Error.

2. Find the meaning and give one example of each : Parable, Allegory, Fable, Myth.

3. Write out any parable you have heard of or read, and give its application.

II. Grammar Exercises

4. Make (*a*) a list of five words which contain the abstract noun ending -ism, e.g. *organism.*

(*b*) A list of five words which contain the adjective suffix -less, e.g. *motionless.*

(*c*) A list of five words which contain the adjective suffix -y, e.g. *glossy.*

5. (*a*) Compose sentences using the following words, which are usually nouns, as adjectives : *eagle*, *land*, *power*, *field*, *winter*, *calm*, *paper*, *tree.*

(*b*) Compose sentences using the following words, which are usually adjectives, as nouns : *rapid*, *cold*, *English*, *wild*, *round*, *two*, *level.*

6. From the extracts in this book select examples of (*a*) noun phrases, (*b*) adjective phrases, (*c*) adverb phrases.

XIV

THE DEFENCE OF ALICANTE

At the end of October 1708 General d'Asfeld, having first captured Denia after a short siege, had advanced against Alicante, which was garrisoned by eight hundred British and Huguenots, under Major-General John Richards. The siege of Alicante is memorable chiefly for the manner of Richards' death. The castle was built on the solid rock, and the only possible method of destroying its defences was by means of mining. After three months of incessant work, d'Asfeld hewed a gallery through the rock beneath the castle, charged it with seventy-five boxes of powder, and then summoned Richards to surrender, inviting him at the same time to send two officers to inspect the mine. Two officers accordingly were sent, who returned with the report that the explosion of the mine would doubtless be destructive, but not, in their judgment, fatal to further defence. Richards therefore rejected the summons, nor, though d'Asfeld thrice repeated it, would he return any other answer.

Immediately over the gallery were two guards, each of thirty men, which could not be withdrawn without peril to the safety of the castle. Early in the morning fixed for the springing of the mine, the sentries were posted as usual, pacing up and down in the keen morn-

THE GROUND WAS RENT INTO VAST CLEFTS.

ing air, when General Richards and all the senior officers of the garrison who were off duty came and joined them. They were come to stand by their men in the hour of trial. A little before six a thin column of blue smoke came curling up the rock, and a corporal of the guard reported that the match had been fired. Richards and his officers remained unmovable, the guard stood under arms, and the sentries stuck to their posts. Presently the whole rock trembled again ; the ground beneath their feet was rent into vast clefts which yawned for a moment with a hideous hollow roar and instantly closed. When the rumbling had ceased there were still eighteen men left on the rock, but Richards, with eleven other officers and fifty-two of their comrades, had been swallowed up like the company of Korah. Yet Richards was right, for when Admiral Byng and General Stanhope arrived six weeks later, the garrison still remained unconquered in the castle. But it was thought best to evacuate it, so the little force was carried away to Mahon, leaving Richards and his brave companions asleep in the womb of the rock. Among the forgotten graves of British soldiers that are sown so thickly over the world, one at least is safe from the ravages of time, the living tomb over which John Richards and his comrades stood, waiting undismayed till it should open to engulf them, at Alicante.

From *A History of the British Army*, by SIR JOHN FORTESCUE.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. Give in your own words an account of the mining of the castle.

2. Find words which might be used in place of these in the text : *garrisoned*, *memorable*, *incessant*, *accordingly*, *summons*, *immovable*, *yawned*, *comrades*, *evacuate*, *ravages*.

II. Grammar Exercises

3. What are the enlargements of the simple subject (which is printed in italics) in each of the following sentences ?

(*a*) *General d'Asfeld*, having first captured Denia after a short siege, had advanced against Alicante.

(*b*) The *siege* of Alicante is memorable chiefly for the manner of Richards' death.

(*c*) Immediately over the gallery were two *guards*, each of thirty men, which could not be withdrawn without peril to the safety of the castle.

(*d*) *Richards*, with eleven other officers and forty-two of their comrades, had been swallowed up.

(*e*) Among the forgotten graves of British soldiers that are sown so thickly over the world, *this* at least is safe from the ravages of time, the living tomb over which John Richards and his comrades stood waiting undismayed till it should open to engulf them, at Alicante.

4. Write sentences (three for each) containing noun, adjective, and adverb phrases.

5. Point out the prefixes and suffixes in the following words and explain the force of the prefix in each case : *superficial*, *impracticable*, *discouraged*, *confidence*, *precursor*, *anticipation*, *injustice*, *unjustly*, *extended*, *opposition*, *unsordid*, *percentages*, *indomitable*, *unassuming*, *preconceived*.

XV

HOW SLEEP THE BRAVE

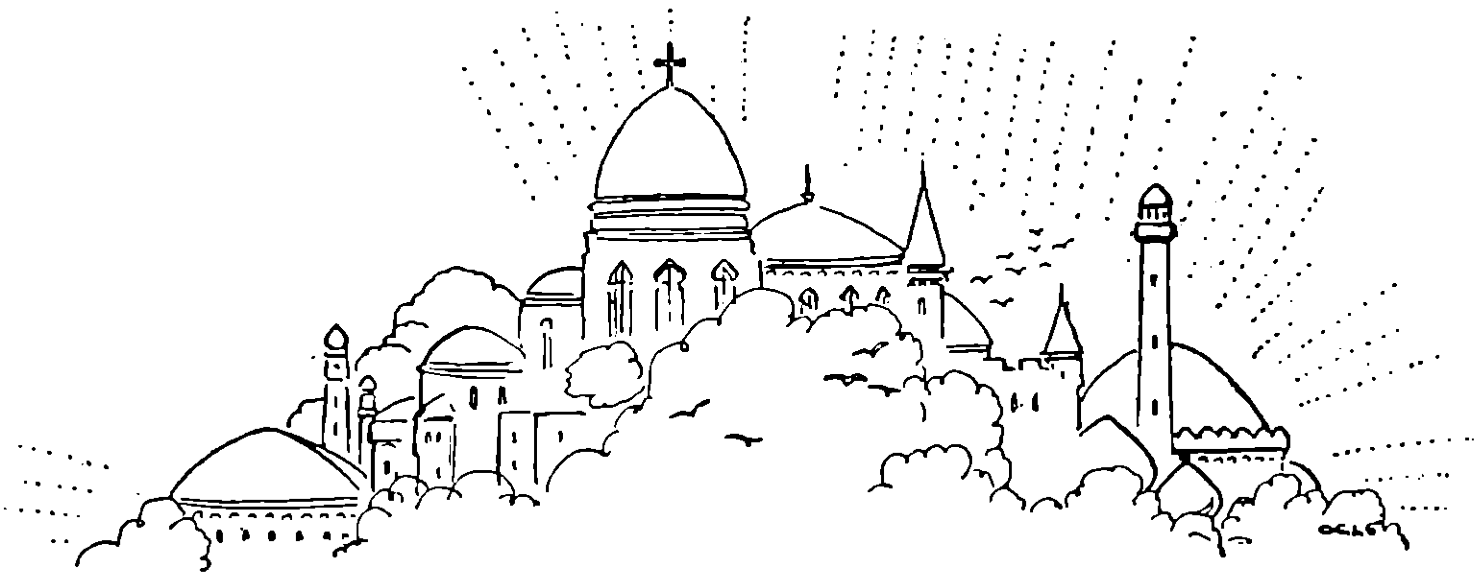
How sleep the brave who sink to rest
Forever by their country blest?
When Spring, with dewy fingers cold,
Returns to deck their hallowed mould,
She there shall dress a sweeter sod
Than Fancy's feet have ever trod.

By fairy hands their knell is rung;
By forms unseen their dirge is sung ;
There Honour comes, a pilgrim grey,
To dress the turf that wraps their clay ;
And Freedom shall awhile repair
To dwell, a weeping hermit, there.

WILLIAM COLLINS.

XVI

THE CITY OF GOD



And I saw a new heaven and a new earth: for the first heaven and the first earth were passed away; and there was no more sea. And I John saw the holy city, New Jerusalem, coming down from God out of heaven, prepared as a bride adorned for her husband.

And I heard a great voice out of heaven saying, Behold the tabernacle of God is with men, and he will dwell with them, and they shall be his people, and God himself shall be with them, and be their God. And God shall wipe away all tears from their eyes; and there shall be no more death, neither sorrow, nor crying, neither shall there be any more pain: for the former things are passed away.

And he that sat upon the throne said, Behold, I make all things new. And he said unto me, Write; for these words are true and faithful. And he said unto me, It is done. I am Alpha and Omega, the

beginning and the end. I will give unto him that is athirst of the fountain of the water of life freely. He that overcometh shall inherit all things; and I will be his God, and he shall be my son. But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone; which is the second death.

And there came unto me one of the seven angels which had the seven vials full of the seven last plagues, and talked with me, saying, Come hither, I will show thee the bride, the Lamb's wife. And he carried me away in the spirit to a great and high mountain, and shewed me that great city, the holy Jerusalem, descending out of heaven from God, having the glory of God: and her light was like unto a stone most precious, even like a jasper stone, clear as crystal; and had a wall great and high, and had twelve gates; and at the gates twelve angels, and names written thereon, which are the names of the twelve tribes of Israel; on the east three gates; on the north three gates; on the south three gates; and on the west three gates. And the wall of the city had twelve foundations, and in them the names of the twelve apostles of the Lamb.

And he that talked with me had a golden reed to measure the city, and the gates thereof, and the wall thereof. And the city lieth foursquare, and the length is as large as the breadth: and he measured the city with the reed, twelve thousand furlongs. The

length and the breadth and the height of it are equal. And he measured the wall thereof, an hundred and forty and four cubits, according to the measure of a man, that is, of the angel.

And the building of the wall of it was of jasper ; and the city was pure gold, like unto clear glass. And the foundations of the wall of the city were garnished with all manner of precious stones. The first foundation was jasper ; the second, sapphire ; the third, a chalcedony ; the fourth, an emerald ; the fifth, sardonyx ; the sixth, sardius ; the seventh, chrysolyte; the eighth, beryl ; the ninth, a topaz ; the tenth, a chrysoprasus ; the eleventh, a jacinth ; the twelfth, an amethyst.

And the twelve gates were twelve pearls ; every several gate was of one pearl ; and the street of the city was pure gold, as it were transparent glass. And I saw no temple therein : for the Lord God Almighty and the Lamb are the temple of it. And the city had no need of the sun, neither of the moon, to shine in it : for the glory of God did lighten it, and the Lamb is the light thereof. And the nations of them which are saved shall walk in the light of it : and the kings of the earth do bring their glory and honour into it. And the gates of it shall not be shut at all by day ; for there shall be no night there. And they shall bring the glory and honour of the nations into it. And there shall in no wise enter into it anything that defileth, neither whatsoever worketh abomination, or maketh

a lie ; but they which are written in the Lamb's book of life.

And he showed me a pure river of water of life, clear as crystal, proceeding out of the throne of God, and of the Lamb. In the midst of the street of it, and on either side of the river, was there the tree of life, which bare twelve manner of fruits, and yielded her fruit every month ; and the leaves of the tree were for the healing of the nations. And there shall be no more curse : but the throne of God and of the Lamb shall be in it ; and his servants shall serve him ; and they shall see his face ; and his name shall be in their foreheads. And there shall be no night there : and they need no candle, neither light of the sun ; for the Lord God giveth them light : and they shall reign for ever and ever.

From *Revelation.*

COMPOSITION EXERCISES

1. Make sentences, one for each word, with:—*principal, principle, celerity, celebrity.*

2. Use these words to show that they have two or more meanings : *intimate, hale, quarry, cleave.*

3. Give definitions of the following words ; then compare your answers with the definitions given in a dictionary : *a telescope, tobacco, bacon, a fossil.*

4. Use the following words first in a literal, then in a figurative sense : *iron, breath, golden, dry.*

XVII

THE HEAVENLY CITY

JERUSALEM, my happy home,
  When shall I come to thee?
When shall my sorrows have an end?
  Thy joys when shall I see?

O happy harbour of the Saints!
  O sweet and pleasant soil!
In thee no sorrow may be found,
  No grief, no care, no toil.

There lust and lucre cannot dwell;
  There envy bears no sway;
There is no hunger, heat, nor cold,
  But pleasure every way.

Thy walls are made of precious stones,
  Thy bulwarks diamonds square;
Thy gates are of right Orient pearl,
  Exceeding rich and rare.

Thy turrets and thy pinnacles
  With carbuncles do shine;
Thy very streets are paved with gold
  Surpassing clear and fine.

THE HEAVENLY CITY.

Ah, my sweet home, Jerusalem,
Would God I were in thee !
Would God my woes were at an end,
Thy joys that I might see !

Thy vineyards and thy orchards are
Most beautiful and fair,
Full furnishèd with trees, and fruits
Most wonderful and rare.

Thy gardens and thy gallant walks
Continually are green ;
There grow such sweet and pleasant flowers
As nowhere else are seen.

Quite through the streets, with silver sound,
The flood of Life doth flow ;
Upon whose banks on every side
The wood of life doth grow.

There trees for evermore bear fruit,
And evermore do spring ;
There evermore the angels sit,
And evermore do sing.

Jerusalem, my happy home,
Would God I were in thee !
Would God my woes were at an end,
Thy joys that I might see !

F. P. B.

XVIII

THE ROMAN GUIDE

GUIDES know about enough English to tangle everything up so that a man can make neither head nor tail of it. They know their story by heart—the history of every statue, painting, cathedral, or other wonder they show you. They know it and tell it as a parrot would—and if you interrupt, and throw them off the track, they have to go back and begin over again. All their lives long they are employed in showing strange things to foreigners and delight in listening to their bursts of admiration. It is what prompts children to say smart things, and do absurd ones, and in other ways show off when company is present. It is what makes gossips turn out in rain and storm to go and be the first to tell a startling bit of news. Think, then, what a passion it becomes with a guide whose privilege it is every day to show to strangers wonders that throw them into perfect ecstasies of admiration! He gets so that he could not by any possibility live in a soberer atmosphere. After we discovered this, we *never* went into ecstasies any more—we never admired anything—we never showed any but impassive faces and stupid indifference in the presence of the sublimest wonders a guide had to display. We had found their weak point. We have made good use of it ever since. We have made some of those

people savage at times, but we have never lost our own serenity.

The doctor asks the questions generally, because he can keep his countenance, and look more like an inspired idiot, and throw more imbecility into the tone of his voice than any man that lives. It comes natural to him.

The guides in Genoa are delighted to secure an American party, because Americans so much wonder, and deal so much in sentiment and emotion before any relic of Columbus. Our guide there fidgeted about as if he had swallowed a spring mattress. He was full of animation, full of impatience. He said—

"Come wis me, genteelmen! Come! I show you ze letter writing by Christopher Colombo!—write it himself!—write it wis his own hand!—come!"

He took us to the municipal palace. After much impressive fumbling of keys and opening of locks, the stained and aged document was spread before us. The guide's eyes sparkled. He danced about us and tapped the parchment with his finger.

"What I tell you, genteelmen? Is it not so? See! Handwriting Christopher Colombo!—write it himself!"

We looked indifferent—unconcerned. The doctor examined the document very deliberately, during a painful pause. Then he said, without any show of interest:

"Ah—Ferguson—what—what did you say was the name of the party who wrote this?"

"Christopher Colombo! Ze great Christopher Colombo!"

Another deliberate examination.

"Ah—did he write it himself, or—or how?"

"He write it himself!—Christopher Colombo!—he's own handwriting, write by himself!"

Then the doctor laid the document down and said—

"Why, I have seen boys in America only fourteen years old that could write better than that."

"But zis is ze great Christo——"

"I don't care who it is! It's the worst writing I ever saw. Now you mustn't think you can impose on us because we are strangers. We are not fools, by a good deal. If you have got any specimens of penmanship of real merit, trot them out!—and if you haven't, drive on!"

We drove on. The guide was considerably shaken up, but he made one more venture. He had something he thought would overcome us. He said:

"Oh, genteelmen, you come wis me! I show you beautiful, O magnificent bust Christopher Colombo!—splendid, grand, magnificent!"

He brought us before the beautiful bust—for it *was* beautiful,—and sprang back and struck an attitude.

"Ah, look, genteelmen!—beautiful, grand,—bust Christopher Colombo!—beautiful bust, beautiful pedestal!"

THE DOCTOR PUT UP HIS EYEGLASS.

The doctor put up his eyeglass—procured for such occasions.

" Ah—what did you say this gentleman's name was ? "

" Christopher Colombo !—ze great Christopher Colombo ! "

" Christopher Colombo—the great Christopher Colombo. Well, what did *he* do ? "

" Discover America !—discover America. Oh, ze devil ! "

" Discovered America. No—that statement will hardly wash. We are just from America ourselves. We heard nothing about it. Christopher Colombo—pleasant name—is—is he dead ? "

"Oh, corpo di Baccho!—three hundred year!"

"What did he die of?"

"I do not know!—I cannot tell."

"Smallpox, think?"

"I do not know, genteelmen!—I do not know *what* he die of!"

"Measles, likely?"

"Maybe—maybe—I do *not* know—I think he die of somethings."

"Parents living?"

"Im-possible!"

"Ah—which is the bust and which is the pedestal?"

"Santa Maria! *zis* ze bust!—*zis* ze pedestal!"

"Ah, I see, I see—happy combination—very happy combination, indeed. Is—is this the first time this gentleman was ever on a bust?"

That joke was lost on the foreigner; guides cannot master the subtleties of the American joke.

We have made it interesting for this Roman guide. Yesterday we spent three or four hours in the Vatican again, that wonderful world of curiosities. We came very near expressing interest sometimes, even admiration; it was very hard to keep from it. We succeeded though. Nobody else ever did in the Vatican museums. The guide was bewildered, nonplussed. He walked his legs off, nearly, hunting up extraordinary things, and exhausted all his ingenuity on us, but it was a failure; we never showed any interest in anything. He had reserved what he considered to be his

greatest wonder till the last, a royal Egyptian mummy, the best preserved in the world, perhaps. He took us there. He felt so sure this time that some of his old enthusiasm came back to him.

"See, genteelmen!—Mummy! Mummy!"

The eyeglass came up as calmly, as deliberately as ever.

"Ah, Ferguson, what did I understand you to say the gentleman's name was?"

"Name?—he got no name!—Mummy!—'Gyptian mummy!"

"Yes, yes. Born here?"

"No! *'Gyptian* mummy!"

"Ah, just so. Frenchman, I presume?"

"No!—*not* Frenchman, not Roman!—born in Egypta!"

"Born in Egypta. Never heard of Egypta before. Foreign locality, likely. Mummy—mummy. How calm he is, how self-possessed. Is, ah—is he dead?"

"Oh, *sacré bleu*, been dead three thousan' year!"

The doctor turned on him savagely:

"Here, now, what do you mean by such conduct as this? Playing us for Chinamen because we are strangers and trying to learn! Trying to impose your vile second-hand carcases on *us*! Thunder and lightning, I've a notion to—to—if you've got a nice *fresh* corpse, fetch him out! or, by George, we'll brain you!"

We made it exceedingly interesting for this French-

man. However, he paid us back, partly, without knowing it. He came to the hotel this morning to ask if we were up, and he endeavoured as well as he could to describe us, so that the landlord would know which persons he meant. He finished with the casual remark that we were lunatics. The observation was so innocent and so honest that it amounted to a very good thing for a guide to say.

From *Innocents Abroad*, by MARK TWAIN.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. Write a humorous passage in which an old English guide is showing a party round an English castle or cathedral. Imagine that the guide has been telling the same story for twenty years.

2. Express the meaning of the following sentences as simply and directly as you can :

(*a*) A man can make neither head nor tail of it.

(*b*) They tell you their story as a parrot would.

(*c*) If you throw them off the track, they have to begin again.

(*d*) The guide was considerably shaken up.

(*e*) At these words, the basket-seller began to build splendid castles in the air.

(*f*) In about five minutes I had completely lost my head.

(*g*) Though I saw nothing, my ears drank in every sound.

II. Grammar Exercises

3. (*a*) " But before this they had daubed my *face*." Here *face* is used as a noun. Make sentences in which it is used as (*a*) a verb, (*b*) an adjective.

(*b*) "I *lay* down on the grass." Here *lay* is used as a verb. Make sentences in which it is used as (*a*) a noun, (*b*) an adjective.

(*c*) "They brought me a *second* hogshead." Here *second* is used as an adjective. Make sentences in which it is used as (*a*) a noun, (*b*) a verb.

4. In which of these sentences are the verbs used transitively, and in which intransitively?

(*a*) They know their story by heart.

(*b*) We never went into ecstasies.

(*c*) We never showed any but stupid indifference.

(*d*) The doctor generally asks the questions.

(*e*) The guide danced about us and tapped the parchment with his finger.

(*f*) He sprang back and struck an attitude.

5. Name the antecedents of the relative pronouns italicized in:

(*a*) What a passion it becomes with a guide *whose* privilege it is to show to strangers wonders *that* throw them into ecstasies of admiration.

(*b*) The doctor can throw more imbecility into his tone than any man *that* lives.

(*c*) I have seen boys in America fourteen years old *that* could write better than that.

(*d*) The guide had something to show *which* he thought would overcome us.

(*e*) Several had been entertained with music *who* had passed by.

XIX

THE TROUT

Piscator. Now you are to know that it is observed, that usually the best Trouts are either red or yellow; though some, as the Fordidge Trout, be white and yet good; but that is not usual: and it is a note observable, that the female Trout hath usually a less head, and a deeper body than the male Trout, and is usually the better meat. And note, that a hog back and a little head, to either Trout, Salmon or any other fish, is a sign that that fish is in season.

But yet you are to note, that as you see some willows or palm trees bud and blossom sooner than others do, so some Trouts be, in rivers, sooner in season: and as some hollies, or oaks, are longer before they cast their leaves, so are some Trouts, in rivers, longer before they go out of season.

And you are to note, that there are several kinds of Trouts: but these several kinds are not considered but by very few men; for they go under the general name of Trouts; just as pigeons do, in most places; though it is certain, there are tame and wild pigeons; and of the tame, there be helmits and runts, and carriers and cropers, and indeed too many to name. Nay, the Royal Society have found and published lately, that there be thirty and three kinds of spiders; and yet all, for aught I know, go under that one

general name of spider. And it is so with many kinds of fish, and of Trouts especially : which differ in their bigness, and shape, and spots, and colour. The great Kentish hens may be an instance, compared to other hens : and, doubtless, there is a kind of small Trout, which will never thrive to be big ; that breeds very many more than others do, that be of a larger size : which you may rather believe, if you consider that the little wren and titmouse will have twenty young ones at a time, when, usually, the noble hawk, or the musical throssel or blackbird, exceed not four or five.

And now you shall see me try my skill to catch a Trout ; and at my next walking, either this evening or to-morrow morning, I will give you direction how you yourself shall fish for him.

Venator. Trust me, master, I see now it is a harder matter to catch a Trout than a Chub ; for I have put on patience, and followed you these two hours, and not seen a fish stir, neither at your minnow nor your worm.

Piscator. Well, scholar, you must endure worse luck sometime, or you will never make a good angler. But what say you now? there is a Trout now, and a good one too, if I can but hold him ; and two or three turns more will tire him. Now you see he lies still, and the sleight is to land him : reach me that landing-net. So, Sir, now he is mine own : what say you now, is not this worth all my labour and your patience?

"THERE IS A TROUT NOW."

Venator. On my word, master, this is a gallant Trout; what shall we do with him?

Piscator. Marry, e'en eat him to supper: we'll go to my hostess from whence we came; she told me, as I was going out of door, that my brother Peter, a good angler and a cheerful companion, had sent word he would lodge there to-night, and bring a friend with him. My hostess has two beds, and I know you and I may have the best: we'll rejoice with my brother Peter and his friend, tell tales, or sing ballads, or make a catch, or find some harmless sport to content us, and pass away a little time without offence to God or man.

Venator. A match, good master, let's go to that house, for the linen looks white, and smells of lavender, and I long to lie in a pair of sheets that smell so. Let's be going, good master, for I am hungry again with fishing.

Piscator. Nay, stay a little, good scholar. I caught my last Trout with a worm ; now I will put on a minnow, and try a quarter of an hour about yonder trees for another ; and, so, walk towards our lodging. Look you, scholar, thereabout we shall have a bite presently, or not at all. Have with you, Sir ! O' my word, I have hold of him. Oh ! it is a great logger-headed Chub ; come, hang him upon that willow twig, and let's be going. But turn out of the way a little, good scholar ! toward yonder high honeysuckle hedge ; there we'll sit and sing, whilst this shower falls so gently upon the teeming earth, and gives yet a sweeter smell to the lovely flowers that adorn these verdant meadows.

Look ! under that broad bush-tree I sat down, when I was last this way a-fishing ; and the birds in the adjoining grove seemed to have a friendly contention with an echo, whose dead voice seemed to live in a hollow tree near to the brow of that primrose hill. There I sat viewing the silver streams glide silently towards their centre, the tempestuous sea ; yet sometimes opposed by rugged roots and pebble-stones, which broke their waves, and turned them into foam ; and sometimes I beguiled time by viewing the harm-

less lambs; some leaping securely in the cool shade, whilst others sported themselves in the cheerful sun; and saw others craving comfort from the swollen udders of their bleating dams. As I thus sat, these and other sights had so fully possest my soul with content, that I thought, as the poet has happily exprest it,

I was for that time lifted above earth;
And possest joys not promis'd in my birth.

As I left this place, and entered into the next field, a second pleasure entertained me; 'twas a handsome milk-maid, that had not yet attained so much age and wisdom as to load her mind with any fears of many things that will never be, as too many men too often do; but she cast away all care, and sung like a nightingale. Her voice was good, and the ditty fitted for it; it was that smooth song which was made by Kit Marlow, now at least fifty years ago; and the milk-maid's mother sung an answer to it, which was made by Sir Walter Raleigh, in his younger days. They were old-fashioned poetry, but choicely good; I think much better than the strong lines that are now in fashion in this critical age. Look yonder! on my word, yonder, they both be a-milking again. I will give her the Chub, and persuade them to sing those two songs to us.

God speed you, good woman! I have been a-fishing; and am going to Bleak Hall to my bed; and having caught more fish than will sup myself and my

friend, I will bestow this upon you and your daughter, for I use to sell none.

Milk Woman. Marry ! God requite you, Sir, and we'll eat it cheerfully. And if you come this way a-fishing two months hence, a grace of God ! I'll give you a syllabub of new verjuice, in a new-made hay-cock, for it. And my Maudlin shall sing you one of her best ballads ; for she and I both love all anglers, they be such honest, civil, quiet men. In the meantime, will you drink a draught of real cow's milk ? You shall have it freely.

Piscator. No, I thank you ; but, I pray, do us a courtesy that shall stand you and your daughter in nothing, and yet we will think ourselves still something in your debt : it is but to sing us a song that was sung by your daughter when I last passed over this meadow, about eight or nine days since.

Milk Woman. What song was it, I pray ? Was it, "Come, Shepherds, deck your herds" ? or, "As at noon Dulcina rested" ? or, "Phillida flouts me" ? or, "Chevy Chace" ? or, "Johnny Armstrong" ? or, "Troy Town" ?

Piscator. No, it is none of those ; it is a song that your daughter sung the first part, and you sung the answer to it.

Milk Woman. O, I know it now. I learned the first part in my golden age, when I was about the age of my poor daughter ; and the latter part, which indeed fits me best now, but two or three years ago,

when the cares of the world began to take hold of me ; but you shall, God willing, hear them both ; and sung as well as we can, for we both love anglers. Come, Maudlin, sing the first part to the gentlemen, with a merry heart ; and I'll sing the second when you have done.

From *The Compleat Angler*, by IZAAK WALTON.

EXERCISES

I

1. Find information about : The Royal Society, Kit Marlow, Sir Walter Raleigh.

II. Composition Exercise

2. Point out any passages which seem strange to you, that is, passages which you would express differently, e.g. " What shall we do with him ? Marry, e'en eat him to supper."

III. Grammar Exercises

3. Make a list of the auxiliary verbs in the following, and explain the meaning or force of each :

(*a*) There is a kind of small trout which will never thrive to be big.

(*b*) I have not seen a fish stir for two hours.

(*c*) What shall we do with him ?

(*d*) My brother Peter had sent me word that he would lodge there to-night.

(*e*) This song was made by Sir Walter Raleigh.

(*f*) She does not load her mind with fears of many things that will never be.

(*g*) I have been fishing.

(*h*) I am going to Bleak Hall.

(*i*) We are being watched from that window.

4. Classify the verbs italicized in the following as principal and auxiliary, and in the case of the principal verbs give another verb of the same meaning.

(*a*) The Royal Society *have* found that there are thirty and three kinds of spiders.

(*b*) The little wren will *have* twenty young ones at a time.

(*c*) My hostess *has* two beds.

(*d*) This fortress *had* for a long time been besieged by the enemy.

(*e*) Will you *have* some more tea ?

(*f*) Cæsar *had* his prisoner put to death.

(*g*) Cæsar *had* put his prisoner to death.

5. What is the meaning of *do* or *done* in each of the following sentences ?

(*a*) Some willows bud and blossom sooner than others do.

(*b*) They go under the general name of Trouts, just as pigeons do.

(*c*) She does not load her mind with fears of many things that will never be, as too many men do.

(*d*) Maudlin, sing the first song, and I'll sing the second when you have done.

(*e*) I went to buy some material for a dress. After seeing several kinds of cloth, I said, "This flowered pattern will do ; cut me a piece of it."

(*f*) For the first seventy thousand ages mankind ate their meat raw, clawing and biting it from the living animal, as they *do* in Abyssinia to this day.

XX

THE MILKMAID'S SONG

COME live with me and be my Love,
And we will all the pleasures prove
That hills and valleys, dales and fields,
Or woods or steepy mountain yields.

And we will sit upon the rocks
And see the shepherds feed their flocks
By shallow rivers to whose falls
Melodious birds sing madrigals.

And I will make thee beds of roses
And a thousand fragrant posies ;

A cap of flowers, and a kirtle
Embroidered all with leaves of myrtle.

A gown made of the finest wool
Which from our pretty lambs we pull ;
Fair linèd slippers for the cold,
With buckles of the purest gold.

A belt of straw and ivy-buds
With coral clasps and amber studs ;
And if these pleasures may thee move,
Come live with me and be my Love.

Thy silver dishes, for thy meat,
As precious as the Gods do eat,
Shall, on an ivory table, be
Prepared each day for thee and me.

The shepherd swains shall dance and sing
For thy delight each May morning :
If these delights thy mind may move,
Then live with me and be my Love.

CHRISTOPHER MARLOWE.

XXI

THE MOTHER'S ANSWER

If all the world and love were young,
And truth in every shepherd's tongue,
These pretty pleasures might me move
To live with thee and be thy Love.

But Time drives flocks from field to fold,
When rivers rage and rocks grow cold ;
Then Philomel becometh dumb ;
And age complains of cares to come.

The flowers do fade, and wanton fields
To wayward Winter reckoning yields :

A honey tongue, a heart of gall,
Is Fancy's spring, but Sorrow's fall.

Thy gowns, thy shoes, thy beds of roses,
Thy cap, thy kirtle, and thy posies,
Soon break, soon wither, soon forgotten ;
In folly ripe, in reason rotten.

Thy belt of straw and ivy-buds,
Thy coral clasps and amber studs,—
All these in me no means can move
To come to thee and be thy Love.

What should we talk of dainties, then,
Of better meat than's fit for men ?
These are but vain ; that's only good
Which God hath blessed, and sent for food.

But could youth last and love still breed,
Had joys no date, nor age no need,
Then those delights my mind might move,
To live with thee and be thy Love.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH.

XXII

THE DEATH OF CÆSAR

THE soothsayers, having sacrificed many beasts one after another, told him that none did like them : then he determined to send Antonius to adjourn the session of the Senate. But in the meantime came Decius Brutus, surnamed Albinus, in whom Cæsar put such confidence that in his last will and testament he had appointed him to be his next heir, and yet was of the conspiracy with Brutus and Cassius. He, fearing that if Cæsar did adjourn the session that day the conspiracy would be betrayed, laughed at the soothsayers, and reproved Cæsar, saying that he gave the Senate occasion to mislike with him, and that they might think he mocked them, considering that by his commandment they were assembled, and that they were ready willingly to grant him all things, and to proclaim him king of all the provinces of the empire of Rome and of Italy, and that he should wear his diadem in all other places both by sea and land. And furthermore that if any man should tell them from him, they should depart for that present time, and return again when Calpurnia should have better dreams, what would his enemies and ill-wishers say, and how could they like of his friend's words ? And who could persuade them otherwise, but that they would think his dominion a slavery unto them, and

tyrannical in himself? "But yet if it be so," said he, "that you utterly mislike the day, it is better that you go yourself in person, and saluting the Senate, to dismiss them till another time." Therewithal he took Cæsar by the hand, and brought him out of his house.

Cæsar was not gone far from his house, but a bondman, a stranger, did what he could to speak with him: and when he saw he was put back by the great press and multitude of people that followed him, he went straight to his house, and put himself into Calpurnia's hands, to be kept till Cæsar came back again, telling her that he had great matters to impart unto him. And one Artemidorus also, born in the Isle of Cnidos, a doctor of rhetoric in the Greek tongue, who by means of his profession was very familiar with certain of Brutus' confederates, and therefore knew the most part of all their practices against Cæsar, came and brought him a little bill written with his own hand, of all that he meant to tell him. He, watching how Cæsar received all the supplications that were offered him, and that he gave them straight to his men that were about him, pressed nearer to him, and said: "Cæsar, read this memorial to yourself, for they be matters of great weight, and touch you nearly." Cæsar took it of him, but could never read it, though he many times attempted it, for the number of people that did salute him: but holding it still in his hands, keeping it to himself, went on withal into the Senate House. Howbeit others are of opinion that it was some man

else that gave him that memorial, and not Artemidorus, who did what he could all the way as he went to give it Cæsar, but he was always repulsed by the people.

For these things, they may seem to come by chance : but the place where the murder was prepared, and where the Senate were assembled, and where also there stood up an image of Pompey dedicated by himself amongst other ornaments which he gave unto the theatre, all these were manifest proofs that it was the ordinance of some god that made the treason to be executed, specially in that very place. It is also reputed that Cassius (though otherwise he did favour the doctrine of Epicurus) beholding the image of Pompey, before they entered into the action of their traitorous enterprise, he did softly call upon it to aid him : but the instant danger of the present time, taking away his former reason, did suddenly put him into a furious passion, and make him like a man half beside himself. Now Antonius, that was a faithful friend to Cæsar, and a valiant man besides of his hands, him Decius Brutus Albinus entertained out of the Senate House, having begun a long tale of set purpose.

So Cæsar coming into the House, all the Senate stood up on their feet to do him honour. Then part of Brutus's company and confederates stood round about Cæsar's chair, and part of them also came towards him, as though they made suit with Metellus Cimber, to call home his brother again from banish-

ment: and thus prosecuting still their suit, they followed Cæsar till he was set in his chair. Who, denying their petition, and being offended with them one after another, because the more they were denied the more they pressed upon him, and were the earnester with him, Metellus at length, taking his gown with both his hands, pulled it over his neck, which was the sign given the confederates to set upon him. Then Casca behind him strake him in the neck with his sword: howbeit the wound was not great nor mortal, because, it seemed, the fear of such a devilish attempt did amaze him, and take his strength from him, that he killed him not at the first blow. But Cæsar turning straight unto him, caught hold of his sword and held it hard, and they both cried out, Cæsar in Latin, "O vile traitor Casca, what doest thou?" and Casca in Greek to his brother, "Brother, help me." At the beginning of the stir, they that were present, not knowing of the conspiracy, were so amazed with the horrible sight they saw, they had no power to fly, neither to help him, nor so much as once to make an outcry. They on the other side, that conspired his death, compassed him in on every side with their swords drawn in their hands, that Cæsar turned him nowhere, but he was stricken by some, and still had naked swords in his face, and was hacked and mangled among them, as a wild beast taken of hunters. For it was agreed among them that every man should give him a wound, because all their parts should be in

THE DEATH OF CÆSAR.

this murder: and then Brutus himself gave him one wound. Men report also that Cæsar did still defend himself against the rest, running every way with his body: but when he saw Brutus with his sword drawn in his hand, then he pulled his gown over his head, and made no more resistance, and was driven either casually or purposedly, by the counsel of the conspirators, against the base whereon Pompey's image stood, which ran all of a gore-blood till he was slain. Thus it seemed that the image took just revenge of Pompey's enemy, being thrown down on the ground at his feet, and yielding up his ghost there, for the number of wounds he had upon him. For it is reputed that he had three-and-twenty wounds upon his body, and divers of the conspirators did hurt themselves, striking one body with so many blows.

When Cæsar was slain, the Senate (though Brutus stood in the midst among them, as though he would have said something touching the fact) presently ran out of the House, and flying filled all the city with marvellous fear and tumult, insomuch as some did shut to their doors, others forsook their shops and warehouses, and others ran to the place to see what the matter was; and others also that had seen it ran home to their houses again. But Antonius and Lepidus, which were two of Cæsar's chiefest friends, secretly conveying themselves away, fled into other men's houses and forsook their own.

The next morning, Brutus and his confederates came

into the market-place to speak unto the people, who gave them such audience that it seemed that they neither greatly reproved not allowed the fact ; for by their great silence they showed that they were sorry for Cæsar's death, and also that they did reverence Brutus. But when they had opened Cæsar's testament, and found a liberal legacy of money bequeathed unto every citizen of Rome, and that they saw his body (which was brought into the market-place all bemangled with gashes of swords), then there was no order to keep the multitude and common people quiet, but they plucked up forms, tables, and stools, and laid them all about the body, and setting them afire, burnt the corpse. Then when the fire was well kindled, they took the fire brands and went into their houses that had slain Cæsar, to set them afire. Others also ran up and down the city to see if they could meet with any of them, to cut them in pieces.

From *The Life of Cæsar*,
translated by SIR THOMAS NORTH from PLUTARCH.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. Find as many phrases as you can, drawn from the lives of soldiers, e.g. : To take up arms ; To sell the pass ; To lay siege to ; To run the gauntlet.

2. Use in sentences of your own making the following words which occur in the text : *session, confederates, diadem, tyrannical, supplications, ordinance, conspiracy, casually, legacy.*

3. Part of Decius Brutus' speech in the first paragraph is in indirect speech and part is in direct speech : rewrite the speech,

turning the indirect part into direct speech and the direct part into indirect speech.

4. "Now Antonius, that was a faithful friend to Cæsar, and a valiant man besides of his hands, him Decius Brutus Albinus entertained out of the Senate House, having begun a long tale of set purpose."

(*a*) Put the words of this sentence in the usual order.

(*b*) Which word is unnecessary?

"Brave are all the Greeks who dwell in any Dorian land."

(*a*) Put these words in the usual order.

(*b*) Why did the author arrange them thus?

II. Grammar Exercises

5. Make a classified list of the adjectives in:

(*a*) The soothsayers sacrificed many beasts.

(*b*) He feared that, if Cæsar adjourned the session that day, the conspiracy would be betrayed.

(*c*) Then came Decius Brutus, in whom Cæsar put such confidence that in his last will and testament he appointed him to be his heir.

(*d*) The Senate were ready to grant Cæsar all things.

(*e*) Dismiss them till another time.

(*f*) The stranger was put back by the great press of people.

(*g*) The statue of Pompey stood in that very place.

(*h*) It is said that Cæsar had more than twenty wounds.

(*i*) The conspirators did not go to their own houses.

6. Indicate the adjective phrases in:

(*a*) He wished to make Cæsar king of Italy.

(*b*) Artemidorus was a doctor of rhetoric.

(*c*) Artemidorus brought Cæsar a bill written with his own hand.

(*d*) The danger made Cassius like a man half beside himself.

(*e*) Cæsar was like a wild beast taken by hunters.

(*f*) Cæsar, being thrown down at the foot of the statue, yielded up the ghost.

(*g*) The people found a liberal legacy of money bequeathed unto every citizen of Rome, and saw Cæsar's body all mangled with sword-cuts.

XXIII

MARK ANTONY'S SPEECH OVER THE BODY OF CÆSAR

First Citizen. Stay, ho! and let us hear Mark Antony.

Third Cit. Let him go up into the public chair;
We'll hear him. Noble Antony, go up.

Antony. For Brutus' sake, I am beholding to you.
(*Goes into the pulpit.*)

Fourth Cit. What does he say of Brutus?

Third Cit. He says, for Brutus' sake,
He finds himself beholding to us all.

Fourth Cit. 'Twere best he speak no harm of Brutus here.

First Cit. This Cæsar was a tyrant.

Third Cit. Nay, that's certain:
We are blest that Rome is rid of him.

Sec. Cit. Peace! let us hear what Antony can say.

Ant. You gentle Romans,——

All. Peace, ho! let us hear him.

Ant. Friends, Romans, countrymen, lend me your ears;
I come to bury Cæsar, not to praise him.
The evil that men do lives after them;
The good is oft interred with their bones;
So let it be with Cæsar. The noble Brutus
Hath told you Cæsar was ambitious:

If it were so, it was a grievous fault,
And grievously hath Cæsar answered it.
Here, under leave of Brutus and the rest,—
For Brutus is an honourable man ;
So are they all, all honourable men,—
Come I to speak in Cæsar's funeral.
He was my friend, faithful and just to me :
But Brutus says he was ambitious ;
And Brutus is an honourable man.
He hath brought many captives home to Rome,
Whose ransoms did the general coffers fill :
Did this in Cæsar seem ambitious ?
When that the poor have cried, Cæsar hath wept ;
Ambition should be made of sterner stuff :
Yet Brutus says he was ambitious ;
And Brutus is an honourable man.
You all did see that on the Lupercal
I thrice presented him a kingly crown,
Which he did thrice refuse ; was this ambition ?
Yet Brutus says he was ambitious,
And, sure, he is an honourable man.
I speak not to disprove what Brutus spoke,
But here I am to speak what I do know.
You all did love him once, not without cause :
What cause withholds you then to mourn for him ?
O judgement, thou art fled to brutish beasts,
And men have lost their reason. Bear with me ;
My heart is in the coffin there with Cæsar,
And I must pause till it come back to me.

First Cit. Methinks there is much reason in his sayings.

Sec. Cit. If thou consider rightly of the matter,
Cæsar has had great wrong.

Third Cit. Has he, masters?
I fear there will a worse come in his place.

Fourth Cit. Marked ye his words? He would not take the crown;
Therefore 'tis certain he was not ambitious.

First Cit. If it be found so, some will dear abide it.

Sec. Cit. Poor soul! his eyes are red as fire with weeping.

Third Cit. There's not a nobler man in Rome than Antony.

Fourth Cit. Now mark him, he begins again to speak.

Ant. But yesterday the word of Cæsar might
Have stood against the world: now lies he there,
And none so poor to do him reverence.
O masters, if I were disposed to stir
Your hearts and minds to mutiny and rage,
I should do Brutus wrong and Cassius wrong,
Who, you all know, are honourable men:
I will not do them wrong: I rather choose
To wrong the dead, to wrong myself, and you,
Than I will wrong such honourable men.
But here's a parchment with the seal of Cæsar;
I found it in his closet; 'tis his will;
Let but the commons hear this testament—

Which, pardon me, I do not mean to read—
And they would go and kiss dead Cæsar's wounds
And dip their napkins in his sacred blood,
Yea, beg a hair of him for memory,
And, dying, mention it within their wills,
Bequeathing it as a rich legacy
Unto their issue.

Fourth Cit. We'll hear the will: read it, Mark Antony.

All. The will! the will! we will hear Cæsar's will.

Ant. Have patience, gentle friends, I must not read it;
It is not meet you know how Cæsar loved you.
You are not wood, you are not stones, but men;
And being men, hearing the will of Cæsar,
It will inflame you, it will make you mad:
'Tis good you know not that you are his heirs;
For if you should, O, what would come of it?

Fourth Cit. Read the will; we'll hear it, Antony;
You shall read us the will, Cæsar's will.

Ant. Will you be patient? Will you stay awhile?
I have o'ershot myself to tell you of it:
I fear I wrong the honourable men
Whose daggers have stabbed Cæsar; I do fear it.

Fourth Cit. They were traitors. Honourable men!

All. The will! the testament!

Sec. Cit. They were villains, murderers: the will! read the will.

Ant. You will compel me then to read the will?

"IF YOU HAVE TEARS, PREPARE TO SHED THEM NOW."

Then make a ring about the corpse of Cæsar,
And let me show you him that made the will.
Shall I descend? and will you give me leave?

All. Come down.

Sec. Cit. Descend.

(*He comes down from the pulpit.*)

Third Cit. You shall have leave.

Fourth Cit. A ring; stand round.

First Cit. Stand from the hearse, stand from the body.

Sec. Cit. Room for Antony, most noble Antony.

Ant. Nay, press not so upon me; stand far off.

All. Stand back. Room! Bear back.

Ant. If you have tears, prepare to shed them now.

You all do know this mantle : I remember
The first time ever Cæsar put it on ;
'Twas on a summer's evening, in his tent,
That day he overcame the Nervii :
Look, in this place ran Cassius' dagger through :
See what a rent the envious Casca made :
Through this the well-beloved Brutus stabbed ;
And as he plucked his cursed steel away,
Mark how the blood of Cæsar followed it,
As rushing out of doors, to be resolved
If Brutus so unkindly knocked, or no ;
For Brutus, as you know, was Cæsar's angel :
Judge, O you gods, how dearly Cæsar loved him !
This was the most unkindest cut of all ;
For when the noble Cæsar saw him stab,
Ingratitude, more strong than traitor's arms,
Quite vanquished him : then burst his mighty heart ;
And, in his mantle muffling up his face,
Even at the base of Pompey's statue,
Which all the while ran blood, great Cæsar fell.
O, what a fall was there, my countrymen !
Then I, and you, and all of us fell down,
Whilst bloody treason flourished over us.
O, now you weep, and I perceive you feel
The dint of pity : these are gracious drops.
Kind souls, what ! weep you when you but behold
Our Cæsar's vesture wounded ? Look you here :
Here is himself, marred, as you see, with traitors.

First Cit. O piteous spectacle !

Sec. Cit. O noble Cæsar !
Third Cit. O woeful day !
Fourth Cit. O traitors, villains !
First Cit. O most bloody sight !
Sec. Cit. We will be revenged.
All. Revenge ! About ! Seek ! Burn ! Fire ! Kill ! Slay ! Let not a traitor live !
Ant. Stay, countrymen.
First Cit. Peace there ! hear the noble Antony.
Sec. Cit. We'll hear him, we'll follow him, we'll die with him.

Ant. Good friends, sweet friends, let me not stir you up
To such a sudden flood of mutiny.
They that have dône this deed are honourable ;
What private griefs they have, alas, I know not,
That made them do it : they are wise and honourable,
And will, no doubt, with reasons answer you.
I come not, friends, to steal away your hearts :
I am no orator, as Brutus is ;
But, as you know me all, a plain blunt man,
That love my friend ; and that they know full well
That gave me public leave to speak of him :
For I have neither wit, nor words, nor worth,
Action, nor utterance, nor the power of speech,
To stir men's blood : I only speak right on ;
I tell you that which you yourselves do know :
Show you sweet Cæsar's wounds, poor, poor dumb mouths,

And bid them speak for me : but were I Brutus,
And Brutus Antony, there were an Antony
Would ruffle up your spirits, and put a tongue
In every wound of Cæsar, that should move
The stones of Rome to rise and mutiny.

All. We'll mutiny.

First Cit. We'll burn the house of Brutus.

Third Cit. Away, then ! Come, seek the conspirators.

Ant. Yet hear me, countrymen ; yet hear me speak.

All. Peace, ho ! Hear Antony. Most noble Antony.

Ant. Why, friends, you go to do you know not what :
Wherein hath Cæsar thus deserved your loves ?
Alas, you know not ? I must tell you then :
You have forgot the will I told you of.

All. Most true : the will ! Let's stay and hear the will.

Ant. Here is the will, and under Cæsar's seal.
To every Roman citizen he gives,
To every several man, seventy-five drachmas.

Sec. Cit. Most noble Cæsar ! We'll revenge his death.

Third Cit. O royal Cæsar !

Ant. Hear me with patience.

All. Peace, ho !

Ant. Moreover, he hath left you all his walks,
His private arbours and new-planted orchards,

On this side Tiber ; he hath left them you,
And to your heirs for ever ; common pleasures,
To walk abroad and recreate yourselves.
Here was a Cæsar ! When comes there such another ?

First Cit. Never, never. Come away, away !
We'll burn his body in the holy place,
And with the brands fire the traitors' houses.
Take up the body.

Sec. Cit. Go, fetch fire.

Third Cit. Pluck down benches.

Fourth Cit. Pluck down forms, windows, anything.

(*Exeunt citizens with the body.*)

Ant. Now let it work. Mischief, thou art afoot,
Take thou what course thou wilt.

From *Julius Cæsar*, by WILLIAM SHAKESPEARE.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. (*a*) " You all did see that on the Lupercal
I thrice presented him a kingly crown,
Which he did thrice refuse : was this ambition ? "

Make a statement equivalent in meaning to " Was this ambition ? ".

(*b*) " Breathes there a man with soul so dead
Who never to himself has said,
' This is my own, my native land ' ? "

Rewrite this as a statement without altering the meaning. What changes have to be made in order to do so ?

(*c*) " And, in his mantle muffling up his face,
Even at the base of Pompey's statue,
Which all the while ran blood, great Cæsar fell."

Rewrite this sentence, placing the words in the order that seems to

you most natural. Why did the author place "Great Cæsar fell" at the conclusion?

II. Grammar Exercises

2. Replace the italicized pronouns by the nouns to which they refer in:

(*a*) Marked ye *his* words, "*He* would not take the crown"? (p. 120.)

(*c*) The hidden pitfalls were set very thick at the entrance of the bridge, so that the throngs of people no sooner broke through the cloud, but many of *them* fell into *them.*

(*c*) High over all these there hovers a bird whose action instantly arrests the eagle's attention. By *his* wide curvature of wing and sudden suspension in the air *he* knows *him* to be the fish-hawk.

3. Name the subordinate clauses italicized in the following, that is, state which are noun clauses, which are adjective clauses, and which are adverb clauses:

(*a*) Cæsar was not gone far from the house but a bondman, a stranger, did *what he could* to speak with him: and *when he saw/ he was put back by the great press and multitude of people/that followed him*, he went straight to Calpurnia's house.

(*b*) He, marking *how Cæsar received all the supplications/that were offered to him*, and *that he gave them to the men/that were about him,* pressed nearer.

(*c*) Cæsar could never read it, *though he many times attempted to do so.*

(*d*) At last Cæsar came to the place *where the murder was prepared.*

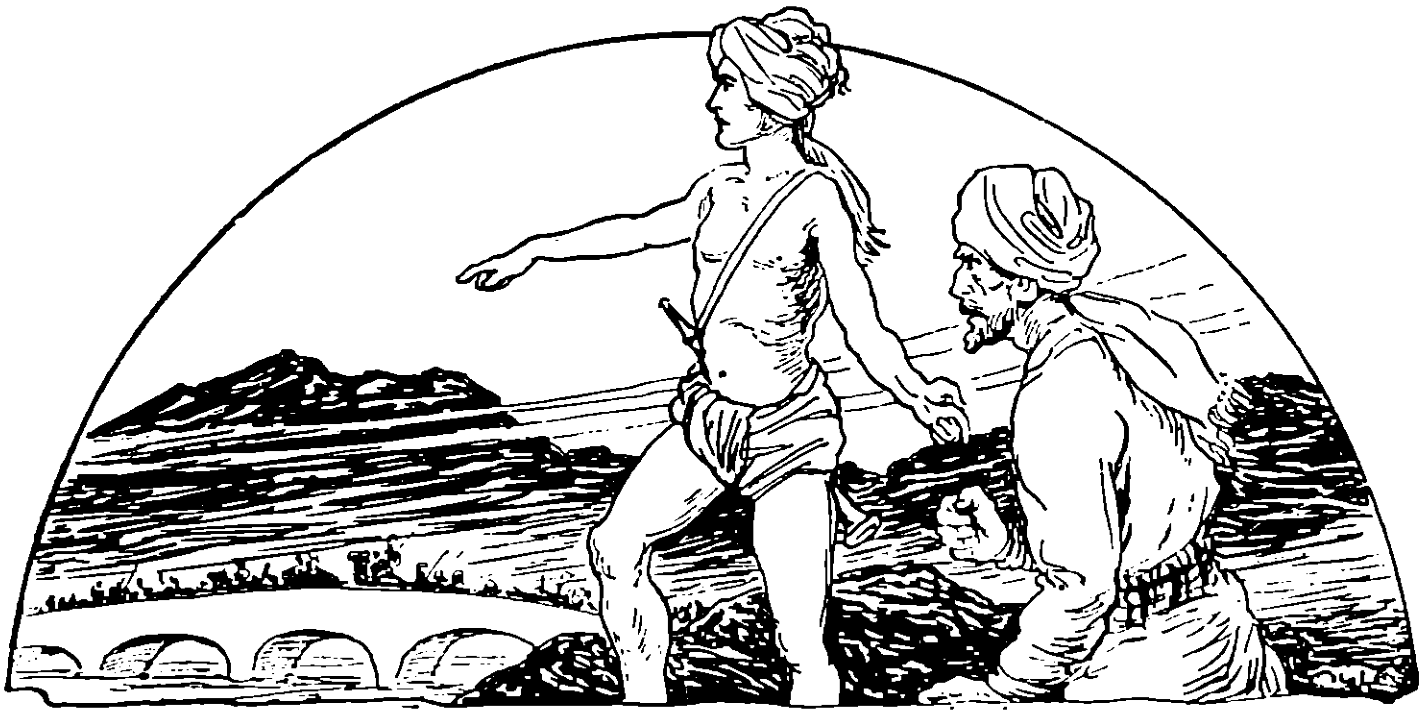
(*e*) It is also reported that Cassius, *though he otherwise favoured the doctrine of Epicurus,* softly called upon it to aid him, *before they began their treacherous enterprise.*

(*f*) Finding *how affairs stood,* his father began to rain blows upon the young rogue's shoulders.

(*g*) *What I am about to say* concerns only the Lacedæmonians.

XXIV

THE VISION OF MIRZAH



WHEN I was at Grand Cairo I picked up several Oriental manuscripts, which I have still by me. Among others I met with one entitled *The Vision of Mirzah*, which I have read over with great pleasure. I intend to give it to the public when I have no other entertainment for them, and shall begin with the first vision, which I have translated word for word as follows:

On the fifth day of the moon, which according to the custom of my forefathers I always keep holy, after having washed myself and offered up my morning devotions, I ascended the high hills of Bagdat, in order to pass the rest of the day in meditation and

prayer. As I was here airing myself on the tops of the mountains, I fell into a profound contemplation on the vanity of human life; and passing from one thought to another, "Surely," I said, "man is but a shadow and life a dream." While I was thus musing, I cast my eyes towards the summit of a rock that was not far from me, where I discovered one in the habit of a shepherd, with a little musical instrument in his hand. As I looked upon him he applied it to his lips, and began to play upon it. The sound of it was exceeding sweet, and wrought into a variety of tunes that were inexpressibly melodious, and altogether different from anything that I had ever heard: they put me in mind of those heavenly airs that are played to the departed souls of good men upon their first arrival in Paradise, to wear out the impressions of the last agonies, and qualify them for the pleasures of that happy place. My heart melted away in secret raptures.

I had been often told that the rock before me was the haunt of a genius, and that several had been entertained with music who had passed by it, but never heard that the musician had before made himself visible. When he had raised my thoughts by those transporting airs which he played, to taste the pleasures of his conversation, as I looked upon him like one astonished, he beckoned to me, and by the waving of his hand directed me to approach the place where he sat. I drew near with that reverence which is due to a

superior nature ; and as my heart was entirely subdued by the captivating strains I had heard, I fell down at his feet and wept. The genius smiled upon me with a look of compassion and affability that familiarized him to my imagination, and at once dispelled all the fears and apprehensions with which I approached him. He lifted me from the ground, and taking me by the hand, " Mirzah," said he, " I have heard thee in thy soliloquies : follow me."

He then led me to the highest pinnacle of the rock, and placing me on the top of it, " Cast thy eyes eastward," said he, " and tell me what thou seest." " I see," said I, " a huge valley, and a prodigious tide of water rolling through it." " The valley that thou seest," said he, " is the Vale of Misery, and the great tide of water that thou seest is part of the great tide of Eternity." " What is the reason," said I, " that the tide I see rises out of a thick mist at one end, and again loses itself in a thick mist at the other ? " " What thou seest," said he, " is that portion of Eternity which is called Time, measured out by the sun, and reaching from the beginning of the world to its consummation. Examine now," said he, " this sea that is bounded with darkness at both ends, and tell me what thou discoverest in it." " I see a bridge," said I, " standing in the midst of the tide." " The bridge thou seest," said he, " is human life ; consider it attentively." Upon a more leisurely survey of it, I found that it consisted of three score and ten entire

arches, with several broken arches, which, added to them that were entire, made up the number about one hundred. As I was counting the arches, the genius told me that the bridge consisted at first of a thousand arches; but that a great flood swept away the rest, and left the bridge in the ruinous condition that I now beheld it. "But tell me further," said he, "what thou discoverest on it." "I see multitudes of people passing over it," said I, "and a black cloud hanging on each end of it." As I looked more attentively, I saw several of the passengers dropping through the bridge into the great tide that flowed underneath it; and, upon further examination, perceived that there were innumerable trap-doors that lay concealed in the bridge, which the passengers no sooner trod upon but they fell through them into the tide, and immediately disappeared. These hidden pitfalls were set very thick at the entrance of the bridge, so that the throngs of people no sooner broke through the cloud, but many of them fell into them. They grew thinner towards the middle, but multiplied and lay closer together towards the end of the arches that were entire.

There were indeed some persons, but their number was very small, that continued a kind of hobbling march on the broken arches, but fell through one after another, being quite tired and spent with so long a walk.

I passed some time in the contemplation of this wonderful structure, and the great variety of objects

which it presented. My heart was filled with a deep melancholy to see several dropping unexpectedly in the midst of mirth and jollity, and catching at everything that stood by them to save themselves. Some were looking up toward the heavens in a thoughtful posture, and in the midst of a speculation stumbled and fell out of sight. Multitudes were very busy in the pursuit of bubbles that glittered in their eyes and danced before them ; but often when they thought themselves within the reach of them their footing failed and down they sunk. In this confusion of objects I observed some with scimitars in their hands, who ran to and fro upon the bridge, thrusting several persons on trap-doors which did not seem to lie in their way, and which they might have escaped had they not been forced upon them.

The genius, seeing me indulge myself in the melancholy prospect, told me I had dwelt long enough upon it. "Take thine eyes off the bridge," said he, "and tell me if thou yet seest anything thou dost not comprehend." Upon looking up, "What mean," said I, "those great flights of birds that are perpetually hovering about the bridge, and settling upon it from time to time? I see vultures, harpies, ravens, cormorants, and among many other feathered creatures several little winged boys, that perch in great numbers upon the middle arches." "These" said the genius, "are Envy, Avarice, Superstition, Despair, Love, and the like cares and passions that infest human life."

I here fetched a deep sigh. " Alas," said I, " man was made in vain ! How is he given away to misery and mortality ! Tortured in life, and swallowed up in death ! " The genius, being moved with compassion towards me, bid me quit so uncomfortable a prospect. " Look no more," said he, " on man in the first stage of his existence, in his setting out for eternity ; but cast thine eye on that thick mist into which the tide bears the several generations of mortals that fall into it." I directed my sight as I was ordered, and (whether or no the good genius strengthened it with any supernatural force, or dissipated part of the mist that was before too thick for the eye to penetrate) I saw the valley opening at the farther end, and spreading forth into an immense ocean, that had a huge rock of adamant running through the midst of it, and dividing it into two equal parts. The clouds still rested on one half of it, insomuch that I could discover nothing in it ; but the other appeared to me a vast ocean planted with innumerable islands that were covered with fruits and flowers, and interwoven with a thousand little shining seas that ran among them. I could see persons dressed in glorious habits, with garlands upon their heads passing among the trees, lying down by the side of fountains, or resting on beds of flowers, and could hear a confused harmony of singing birds, falling waters, human voices, and musical instruments. Gladness grew in me upon the discovery of so delightful a scene. I wished for the

wings of an eagle, that I might fly away to those happy seats ; but the genius told me there was no passage to them except through the gates of death that I saw opening every moment upon the bridge. " The islands," said he, " that lie so fresh and green before thee, and with which the whole face of the ocean appears spotted as far as thou canst see, are more in number than the sands on the sea shore ; there are myriads of islands behind those which thou here discoverest, reaching farther than thine eye, or even thine imagination, can extend itself. These are the mansions of good men after death, who, according to the degree and kinds of virtue in which they excelled, are distributed among these several islands, which abound with pleasures of different kinds and degrees, suitable to the relishes and perfections of those who are settled in them : every island is a paradise accommodated to its respective inhabitants. Are not these, O Mirzah, habitations worth contending for ? Does life appear miserable, that gives thee opportunities of earning such a reward ! Is death to be feared, that will convey thee to so happy an existence ? Think not man was made in vain, who has such an eternity reserved for him." I gazed with inexpressible pleasure on those happy islands. At length said I, " Show me now, I beseech thee, the secrets that lie hid under those dark clouds which cover the ocean on the other side of the rock of adamant." The genius making me no answer, I turned about to address myself to him a

second time, but I found that he had left me ; I then turned again to the vision which I had been so long contemplating. But instead of the rolling tide, the arched bridge, and the happy islands, I saw nothing but the long, hollow valley of Bagdat, with oxen, sheep, and camels grazing upon the sides of it.

JOSEPH ADDISON (No. 159 of *The Spectator*).

EXERCISES

1. In this allegory, what explanation is given of :

(*a*) The valley.
(*b*) The tide of water.
(*c*) The bridge.
(*d*) The great flights of birds.
(*e*) The islands ?

I. Composition Exercises

2. What is meant by : Oriental manuscripts ; the haunt of a genius ; captivating strains ; affability ; apprehensions ; soliloquies ; pinnacle ; consummation ; harpies ; adamant ; inexpressibly melodious ?

3. Express in other words the same sense :

(*a*) " The genius smiled upon me with a look of compassion and affability that familiarized him to my imagination, and at once dispelled all the fears and apprehensions with which I approached him."

(*b*) " Every island is a paradise accommodated to its respective inhabitants."

4. Give a brief account of the vision without using the first person.

II. Grammar Exercises

5. Classify the italicized verbs in these sentences according as they are in the active or the passive voice.

(*a*) I picked up several Oriental manuscripts which I *have* still by me.

(*b*) I intend *to give* it to the public, and shall begin with the first vision, which I *have translated.*

(*c*) I *was told* that the rock before me was the haunt of a genius, and that several *had been entertained* with music who had passed by it, but never heard that the musician *had made* himself visible.

(*d*) My heart *was subdued* by the captivating strains that I *had heard.*

6. Classify the italicized verbs according as they are used transitively or intransitively :

(*a*) I *drew* near with that reverence which is due to a superior nature.

(*b*) The genius *drew* me towards the rock by a motion of his hand.

(*c*) I *fell* down at his feet.

(*d*) Four men set to work to *fell* the tree.

(*e*) My idle fingers *played* with the brown sand.

(*f*) He raised my thoughts by the transporting airs which he *played.*

(*g*) The oceans *bound* Great Britain on all sides.

(*h*) The robbers *bound* the true men.

(*i*) The sure-footed mountain sheep *bound* from ledge to ledge.

XXV

THE TRIAL OF WARREN HASTINGS

On the thirteenth of February, 1788, the sittings of the Court commenced. There have been spectacles more dazzling to the eye, more gorgeous with jewellery and cloth of gold, more attractive to grown-up children, than that which was then exhibited at Westminster; but, perhaps, there never was a spectacle so well calculated to strike a highly cultivated, a reflecting, an imaginative mind. All the various kinds of interest which belong to the near and to the distant, to the present and to the past, were collected on one spot, and in one hour. All the talents and all the accomplishments which are developed by liberty and civilisation were now displayed, with every advantage that could be derived both from co-operation and from contrast. Every step in the proceedings carried the mind either backward, through many troubled centuries, to the days when the foundations of our constitution were laid; or far away, over boundless seas and deserts, to dusky nations living under strange stars, worshipping strange gods, and writing strange characters from right to left. The High Court of Parliament was to sit, according to forms handed down from the days of the Plantagenets, on an Englishman accused of exercising tyranny over the lord of the holy city of Benares, and over the ladies of the princely house of Oude.

The place was worthy of such a trial. It was the great hall of William Rufus, the hall which had resounded with acclamations at the inauguration of thirty kings, the hall which had witnessed the just sentence of Bacon and the just absolution of Somers, the hall where the eloquence of Strafford had for a moment awed and melted a victorious party inflamed with just resentment, the hall where Charles had confronted the High Court of Justice with the placid courage which has half redeemed his fame. Neither military nor civil pomp was wanting. The avenues were lined with grenadiers. The streets were kept clear by cavalry. The peers, robed in gold and ermine, were marshalled by the heralds under Garter King-at-arms. The judges in their vestments of state attended to give advice on points of law. Near a hundred and seventy lords walked in solemn order from their usual place of assembling to the tribunal. The long procession was closed by the Duke of Norfolk, Earl Marshal of the realm, by the great dignitaries, and by the brothers and sons of the king. Last of all came the Prince of Wales, conspicuous by his fine person and noble bearing. The grey old walls were hung with scarlet. The long galleries were crowded by an audience such as has rarely excited the fears or the emulation of an orator. There were gathered together, from all parts of a great, free, enlightened, and prosperous empire, grace and female loveliness, wit and learning, the representatives of every science

and of every art. There were seated round the Queen the fair-haired young daughters of the house of Brunswick. There the ambassadors of great kings and commonwealths gazed with admiration on a spectacle which no other country in the world could present. There Siddons, in the prime of her majestic beauty, looked with emotion on a scene surpassing all the imitations of the stage. There were seen, side by side, the greatest painter and the greatest scholar of the age.

The sergeants made proclamation. Hastings advanced to the bar, and bent his knee. The culprit was indeed not unworthy of that great presence. He had ruled an extensive and populous country, and made laws and treaties, had sent forth armies, had set up and pulled down princes. And in his high place he had so borne himself that all had feared him, that most had loved him, and that hatred itself could deny him no title to glory, except virtue. He looked like a great man, and not like a bad man. A person small and emaciated, yet deriving dignity from a carriage which, while it indicated deference to the court, indicated also habitual self-possession and self-respect, a high and intellectual forehead, a brow pensive but not gloomy, a mouth of inflexible decision, a face pale and worn but serene, on which was written, as legibly as under the picture in the council chamber at Calcutta, *Mens aequa in arduis*:—such was the aspect with which the great proconsul presented himself to his judges.

From Lord Macaulay's *Essay on Warren Hastings.*

XXVI

THE REVENGE

The Lord Thomas Howard, with six of her Majesty's ships, six victuallers of London, the barque *Ralegh*, and two or three other pinnaces riding at anchor near unto Flores, one of the westerly islands of the Azores, the last of August in the afternoon, had intelligence by one Captain Middleton, of the approach of the Spanish Armada, which Middleton, being in a very good sailer, had kept them company three days before, of good purpose, both to discover their forces the more, as also to give advice to my Lord Thomas of their approach. He had no sooner delivered the news but the fleet was in sight. . . .

The Spanish fleet, having shrouded their approach by reason of the island, were now so soon at hand as our ships had scarce time to weigh their anchors, but some of them were driven to let slip their cables, and set sail. Sir Richard Grenville was the last that weighed, to recover the men that were upon the island, which otherwise had been lost. The Lord Thomas with the rest very hardly recovered the wind, which Sir Richard Grenville not being able to do, was persuaded by the Master and others to cut his mainsail and cast about, and to trust to the sailing of the ship : for the squadrons of Seville were on his weather-bow. But Sir Richard utterly refused to turn from the

enemy, alleging that he would rather choose to die than to dishonour himself, his country, and her Majesty's ship, persuading his company that he could pass through the two squadrons, in despite of them, and enforce those of Seville to give him way. Which he performed upon divers of the foremost, who, as the marines term it, sprang their luff, and fell under the lee of the *Revenge*. But the other course had been the better, and might right well have been answered in so great an impossibility of prevailing. Notwithstanding, out of the greatness of his mind he could not be persuaded.

In the meanwhile as he attended those which were nearest him, the great *San Philip*, being in the wind of him and coming towards him, becalmed his sails in such a sort as the ship could neither make way nor feel the helm, so huge and high-cargued was the Spanish ship, being of a thousand and five hundred tons, who after laid the *Revenge* aboard. When he was thus bereft of his sails, the ships that were under his lee, luffing up, also laid him aboard, of which the next was the *Admiral of the Biscaines*, a very mighty and puissant ship commanded by Brittandona. The said *Philip* carried three tier of ordnance on a side, and eleven pieces in every tier. She shot eight forth right out of her chase, besides those of her stern ports.

After the *Revenge* was entangled with the *Philip*, four other boarded her, two on her larboard and two on her starboard. The fight, thus beginning at three

of the clock in the afternoon, continued very terrible all that evening. But the great *San Philip*, having received the lower tier of the *Revenge*, discharged with crossbar-shot, shifted herself with all diligence from her sides, utterly misliking her first entertainment. Some say that the ship foundered, but we cannot report it for truth, unless we were assured.

The Spanish ships were filled with companies of soldiers, in some two hundred besides the mariners, in some five, in others eight hundred. In ours there were none at all besides the mariners, but the servants of the commanders and some few voluntary gentlemen only. After many interchanged volleys of great ordnance and small shot, the Spaniards deliberated to enter the *Revenge*, and made divers attempts, hoping to force her by the multitudes of their armed soldiers and musketeers ; but were still repulsed again and again, and at all times beaten back into their own ships, or into the seas. . . .

Some write that Sir Richard was very dangerously hurt almost in the beginning of the fight, and lay speechless for a time ere he recovered. But two of the *Revenge's* own company brought home in a ship of Lyme from the Islands, examined by some of the Lords and others, affirmed that he was never so wounded as that he forsook the upper deck till an hour before midnight ; and then, being shot into the body with a musket, as he was a-dressing was again shot into the head, as withal his surgeon wounded to death. . . .

But to return to the fight. The Spanish ships which attempted to board the *Revenge*, as they were wounded and beaten off, so always others came in their places, she having never less than two mighty galleons by her sides, and aboard her. So that, ere the morning from three of the clock the day before, there had fifteen several Armadoes assailed her ; and all so ill approved their entertainment, as they were by the break of day far more willing to hearken to a composition than hastily to make any more assaults or entries. But as the day increased, so our men decreased ; and as the light grew more and more, by so much more grew our discomforts. . . .

All the powder of the *Revenge* to the last barrel was now spent, all her pikes broken, forty of her best men slain, and the most part of the rest hurt. In the beginning of the fight she had but one hundred free from sickness, and fourscore and ten sick, laid in hold upon the ballast—a small troop to man such a ship, and a weak garrison to resist so mighty an army. By these hundred all was sustained, the volleys, boardings, and enterings of fifteen ships of war, besides those which beat her at large. On the contrary, the Spanish were always supplied with soldiers brought from every squadron ; all manner of arms and powder at will. Unto ours there remained no comfort at all, no hope, no supply either of ships, men, or weapons : the masts all beaten overboard, all her tackle cut asunder, her upper work altogether rased ; and in effect evened

she was with the water, but the very foundation or bottom of a ship, nothing being left overhead either for flight or defence.

Sir Richard, finding himself in this distress, and unable any longer to make resistance, having endured in this fifteen hours' fight the assault of fifteen several Armadoes, all by turns aboard him, and by estimation eight hundred shot of great artillery, besides many assaults and entries; and that himself and the ship must needs be possessed by the enemy, who were now all cast in a ring round about him (the *Revenge* not able to move one way or the other, but as she was moved by the waves and billow of the sea), commanded the master-gunner, whom he knew to be a most resolute man, to split and sink the ship; that thereby nothing might remain of glory or victory to the Spaniards, seeing in so many hours' fight, and with so great a navy, they were not able to take her, having had fifteen hours' time, fifteen thousand men, and fifty and three sail of men-of-war to perform it withal; and persuaded the company, or as many as he could induce, to yield themselves unto God, and to the mercy of none else; but, as they had like valiant resolute men repulsed so many enemies, they should not now shorten the honour of their nation by prolonging their own lives for a few hours or a few days.

The master-gunner readily condescended, and divers others, but the captain and the master were of another opinion, and besought Sir Richard to have

SIR RICHARD UTTERLY REFUSED TO TURN FROM THE ENEMY.

care of them, alleging that the Spaniard would be as ready to entertain a composition as they were willing to offer the same, and that, there being divers sufficient and valiant men yet living, and whose wounds were not mortal, they might do their country and prince acceptable service hereafter. And whereas Sir Richard had alleged that the Spaniards should never glory to have taken one ship of her Majesty, seeing that they had so long and so notably defended themselves, they answered that the ship had six foot water in hold, three shot under water, which were so weakly stopped as with the first working of the sea she must needs sink, and was besides so crushed and bruised as she could never be removed out of the place.

And as the matter was thus in dispute, and Sir Richard refusing to hearken to any of these reasons, the master of the *Revenge* (while the captain won unto him the greater party) was conveyed aboard the *General Don Alonso Bassan.* Who, finding none overhasty to enter the *Revenge* again, doubting lest Sir Richard would have blown them up and himself, and perceiving by the report of the master of the *Revenge* his dangerous disposition, yielded that all their lives should be saved, the company sent for England, and the better sort to pay such reasonable ransom as their estate would bear, and in the mean season to be free from galley or imprisonment. To this he so much the rather condescended as well, as I

have said, for fear of further loss and mischief to themselves, as also for the desire he had to recover Sir Richard Grenville, whom for his notable valour he seemed greatly to honour and admire.

When this answer was returned, and that safety of life was promised, the common sort being now at the end of their peril, the most drew back from Sir Richard and the master-gunner, being no hard matter to dissuade men from death to life. The master-gunner, finding himself and Sir Richard thus prevented and mastered by the greater number, would have slain himself with a sword had he not been by force withheld and locked into his cabin. Then the *General* sent many boats aboard the *Revenge* ; and divers of our men, fearing Sir Richard's disposition, stole away aboard the *General* and other ships. Sir Richard, thus overmatched, was sent unto by Alonso Bassan to remove out of the *Revenge*, the ship being marvellous unsavoury, filled with blood and bodies of dead and wounded men like a slaughter house. Sir Richard answered that he might do with his body what he list, for he esteemed it not ; and as he was carried out of the ship he swooned, and reviving again desired the company to pray for him. The General used Sir Richard with all humanity, and left nothing unattempted that tended to his recovery, highly commending his valour and worthiness, and greatly bewailing the danger wherein he was, being unto them a rare spectacle, and a resolution seldom approved, to see one

ship turn toward so many enemies, to endure the charge and boarding of so many huge Armadoes, and to resist and repel the assaults and entries of so many soldiers. . . .

There were slain and drowned in this fight well near two thousand of the enemies ; the *Admiral of the Hulks* and the *Ascention* of Seville were both sunk by the side of the *Revenge* ; one other recovered the road of Saint Michael and sunk there also ; a fourth ran herself with the shore to save her men. Sir Richard died, as it is said, the second or third day aboard the *General*, and was by them greatly bewailed. What became of his body, whether it were buried in the sea or on the land, we know not. The comfort that remaineth to his friends is that he hath ended his life honourably in respect of the reputation won to his nation and country, and of the same to his posterity ; and that, being dead, he hath not outlived his own honour.

SIR WALTER RALEIGH (from HAKLUYT'S *Voyages*).

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. Rewrite the following, omitting in each case the word or phrase which is unnecessary :

(1) When Cæsar came into the Senate House, all the Senate stood up on their feet to do him honour.

(2) A footbridge for pedestrians.

(3) The dictator occupies a position of lonely isolation.

(4) He eyed his foe with a look of contempt.

(5) I shall return again soon.

(6) The tiger is equally as strong as the lion.

2. Use these phrases in sentences : the path of duty ; the jaws of death ; the finger of scorn ; a line of argument ; the bond of friendship ; the hand of fate ; the lap of luxury ; a cup of sorrow ; the staff of truth.

3. Express in other words the same sense :

(*a*) "There were motionless, slug-like creatures, young larvæ, perhaps more horrible in their pulpy stillness than even in the infernal wriggle of maturity ! "

(*b*) "The dandelion and the buttercup are growing there, and the broad fans of insect-angels open and shut over their golden disks, as the rhythmic waves of blissful consciousness pulsate through their glorified being."

4. Use in sentences : *community*, *class*, *band*, *horde*, *posse*, *phalanx*, *regiment*, *clan*, *crew*, *body*, *gang*, *knot*.

II. Grammar Exercises

5. Replace by a clause equivalent in meaning each of the italicized phrases in :

(*a*) I cast my eyes towards the summit of the rock that was not far from me, where I discovered one *in the habit of a shepherd.*

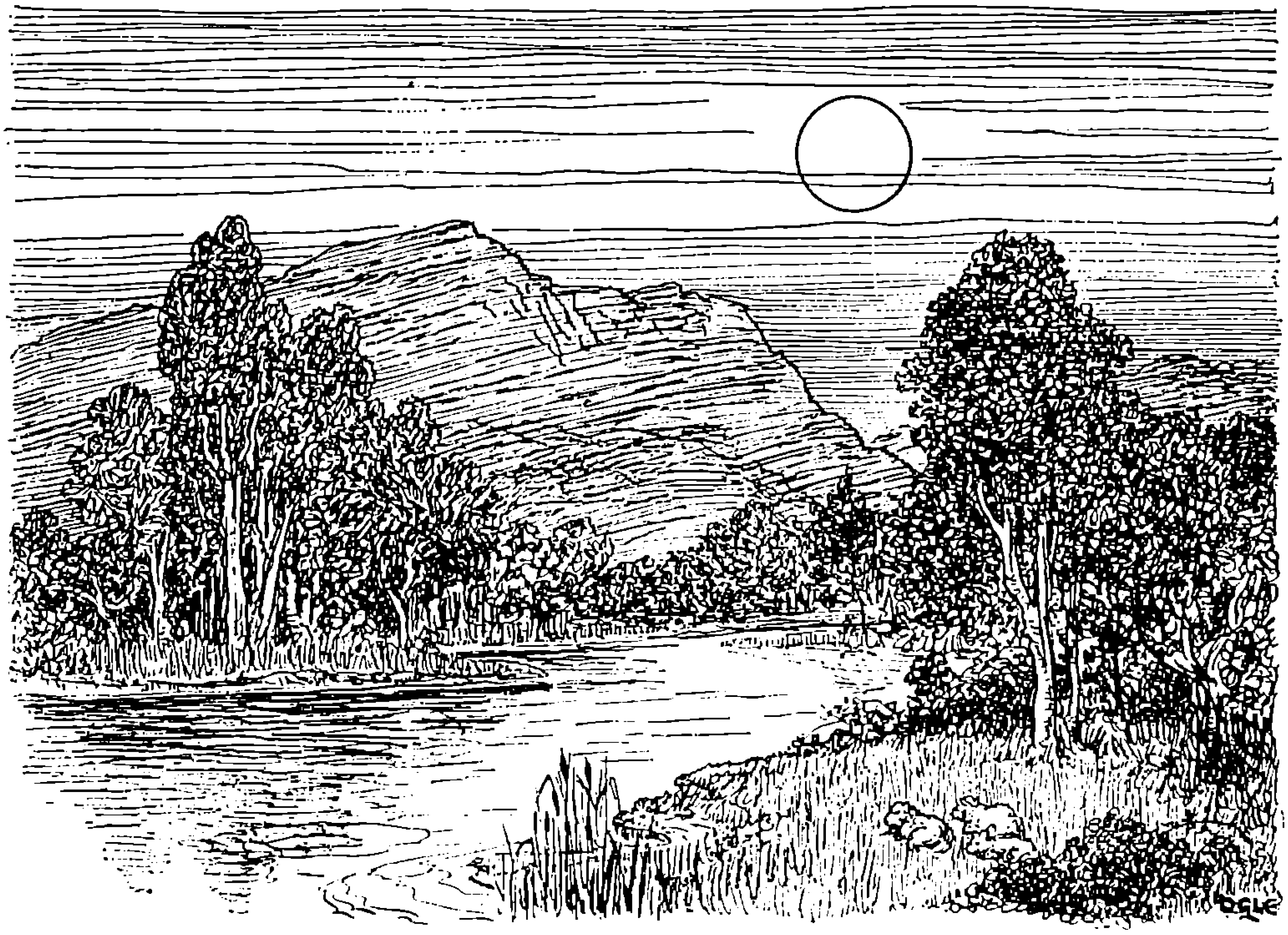
(*b*) The tunes that he played put me in mind of those heavenly airs that are played to the departed souls of good men *upon their first arrival* in Paradise.

(*c*) *The genius making me no answer*, I turned about to address myself to him a second time.

(*d*) The guide paid us back *without knowing it.*

XXVII

EVENING



Now came still evening on, and twilight grey
Had in her sober livery all things clad ;
Silence accompanied : for beast and bird,
They to their grassy couch, these to their nests,
Were slunk, all but the wakeful nightingale ;
She all night long her amorous descant sung ;
Silence was pleased : now glow'd the firmament

With living sapphires ; Hesperus, that led
The starry host, rode brightest, till the moon,
Rising in clouded majesty, at length
Apparent queen, unveil'd her peerless light,
And o'er the dark her silver mantle threw.

From *Paradise Lost*, by JOHN MILTON.

XXVIII

SIRIUS

WIDE, indeed, is the contrast between the splendour of the noonday sun and the feeble twinkling of even the brightest of the stars. This contrast, so forcible to our ordinary observation, can be submitted to the test of actual measurement. Let us take the most brilliant star, Sirius. We can determine by experiment the number of times by which the light of Sirius is surpassed by the light of the sun. It is true we cannot make that comparison directly. In the bright daylight Sirius cannot even be seen ; much less can his light be measured. But we can take the full moon as an intermediate between the glory of the sun and the feeble twinkle of Sirius. It has been found that the light from the sun is about 600,000 times as great as the light from the full moon. Sirius and the full moon can be compared together, and by suitable photometers the quantity of light from the two bodies can be measured. It can be shown that the light of about 33,000 stars, equal to Sirius, would produce an illumination equal to that of the moon. We have thus the necessary figures for comparing the brilliancy of the sun with the brilliancy of Sirius, and the result is, indeed, significant. The light from the sun is about twenty thousand million times as great as the light from Sirius.

But do these figures truly represent the relative importance of the sun and Sirius? Recollect where we are placed. Our earth is near the sun: it is very far from Sirius. Our earth is not properly placed for an impartial comparison between the splendour of the sun and the splendour of Sirius. To make such a comparison, the earth should be placed midway between the two bodies, so that we could look at Sirius on one side and the sun on the other, under precisely similar circumstances. Into such a position our earth never has come, and never will come. How, then, is the real comparison to be accomplished? In this, as in many other cases, it is possible to determine by calculation what it is impossible to ascertain by experiment. It has been found, by observation, that Sirius is about one million times as far from us as the sun; if we take the distance of Sirius from the earth, and subdivide it into one million equal parts, each of these parts would be long enough to span that great distance of 92,700,000 miles from the earth to the sun. If, therefore, the earth were to be placed half-way between the sun and Sirius, the earth would be five hundred thousand times as far away from the sun as it is at present. What would be the effect of the change upon the light received from the sun? Take the light of a candle at one foot as unity, then at two feet the light is reduced to one-fourth, and at three feet to one-ninth, and so on. The light received from a luminous source varies "inversely as

the square of the distance." Transplanted to a distance 500,000 times as great as our present distance from the sun, to what a vast extent must her radiance be diminished ! At present our sun is as bright as 20,000,000,000 stars, each equal to Sirius ; but viewed from this central point, the light is reduced to an almost incredible extent. Our sun would have totally lost his pre-eminence, and could only send to us one-twelfth part of the light which we now receive from Sirius. On the other hand, by shifting our station from the vicinity of the sun to a point half-way to Sirius, the light of Sirius will become intensified in the ratio of four to one. Assuming, then, that the earth is placed in the correct position for testing the comparative splendour of Sirius and the sun, we should find, first, that Sirius was increased four-fold, and that the sun was so enormously reduced in intensity as to look only one-twelfth of the original brightness of Sirius. The consequence is irresistible, and fatal to the pre-eminence of the sun. We may state it thus : Sirius sheds actually forty-eight times as much light around it as does our sun ; we are not exactly entitled to say that Sirius is forty-eight times as big as the sun, but we can say that Sirius is forty-eight times as brilliant or as splendid. In making the calculation, we have taken a lower determination of the brightness of Sirius relatively to the sun than some other careful observations would have warranted. It will thus be seen that if there be any uncertainty in our result it

must only be as to whether Sirius is not really more than forty-eight times as bright as the sun.

Is this surpassing glory of Sirius merely due to excessive brilliancy, or is Sirius really a body which vastly surpasses our sun, both in intrinsic importance as well as in radiance? The question can only be fully answered by measuring the circumference of Sirius, and then placing him in the weighing scales. At first sight it might seem more difficult to achieve the latter than the former. How is it possible that Sirius, at a distance of a hundred billion of miles, should actually be weighed? Yet we can weigh Sirius, and we cannot measure him. We have no idea what the actual bulk of Sirius may be, but as we find that he is certainly heavier than our sun, we may conclude that he is probably larger than the sun, though we can have no certain knowledge on this point.

The splendid pre-eminence of Sirius had caused it to be observed with minute care from the earliest times in the history of astronomy. Each generation of astronomers devoted time and labour to determine the exact place of the brightest star in the heavens. A vast mass of observations as to the place of Sirius among the stars had thus been accumulated, and it was found that, like many other stars, Sirius had what astronomers call proper motion. Comparing the place of Sirius now in the heavens with the place of Sirius one hundred years ago, there is a difference of about

two minutes (131″) in its situation. This is a small quantity: it is so small that the unaided eye could not see it. Were we suddenly to be transplanted back one century ago, we should still see Sirius in its well-known place to the left of Orion. Careful alignment by the eye would hardly detect that Sirius was moving, in two, or even in three or in four centuries. But the accuracy of the meridian circle grasps these minute quantities, and gives to them their true significance. To the eye of the astronomer, Sirius, instead of creeping along with a movement which centuries will not show, is pursuing his majestic course with a velocity appropriate to his dimensions. It is easy to calculate that Sirius must be sweeping along at the rate of a thousand miles a minute.

It is of the utmost importance to observe that though the velocity of Sirius is *about* 1,000 miles a minute, yet it is sometimes a little more and sometimes a little less than its mean value. To the astronomer this fact is pregnant with significance. Were Sirius one isolated star, attended only by planets of comparative insignificance, there would be no irregularity in its motion. If it were once started with a velocity of 1,000 miles a minute, then it must preserve that velocity. Neither the lapse of centuries nor the mighty length of the journey can alter it. The path of Sirius would be inflexible in its direction, and it would be traversed with unalterable velocity.

The fact, then, that Sirius was not moving uni-

formly was of such interest that it arrested the attention of Bessel when he discovered the irregularities in 1844. Believing, as Bessel did, that there must be some adequate cause for these disturbances, it was hardly possible to doubt what the cause must be. When motion is disturbed there must be force in action, and the only force that we recognize in such cases is that known as gravitation. But gravity can only act from one body to another body, so that when we seek for the derangement of Sirius by gravitation, we are obliged to suppose that there must be some mighty and massive body near Sirius. The question was taken up again by Peters and by Anwers, who were able to discover, from the irregularities of Sirius, the nature of the path of the disturbing body. They were able to show that this disturbing body must revolve around Sirius in a period of about fifty years; and although they could not tell the actual distance of the unknown body from Sirius, yet they were able to point out the direction in which it must lie.

In many respects this was a problem analogous to the ever memorable discovery of the planet Neptune. In each case the unknown body had been manifested by the perturbations it produced, and in each case the unknown object was discovered by the calculations of the mathematician, before it was revealed to the penetration of the astronomer. Nearly twenty years had elapsed after Bessel had predicted the disturber of Sirius, before the telescopic discovery which con-

firmed it was made. The circumstances under which that discovery was made are not, indeed, so dramatic as those which attended the discovery of Neptune, but yet they have an interest of their own. Let us quote Professor Newcomb's interesting account of the discovery: "In February, 1862, Messrs. Alvan Clark and Sons, of Cambridgeport, were completing their 18-inch glass for the Chicago Observatory. Turning the glass one evening on Sirius, for the purpose of trying it, the practised eye of the younger Clark soon detected something unusual. 'Why, father,' he exclaimed, 'the star has a companion!' The father looked, and there was a faint companion due east from the bright star and distant about ten seconds. This was exactly the predicted direction for that time, though the discoverers knew nothing of it. As the news went round the world, all the great telescopes were pointed on Sirius; and it was now found that when observers knew where the companion was, many telescopes would show it. It lay in the exact direction which theory had predicted for that time, and it was now observed with the greatest interest in order to see whether it was moving in the direction of the theoretical satellite. Four years' observation showed that this was really the case, so that hardly any doubt could remain that this almost invisible object was really the body which by its attraction and revolution around Sirius had caused the inequality in its motion. At the same time the

correspondence has not since proved exact, the observed companion having moved about half a degree per annum more rapidly than the theoretical one. The difference, though larger than was expected, is probably due to the inevitable errors of the very delicate and difficult observations from which the movements of the theoretical companion were computed."

Recent researches have exhibited the movements of Sirius in a very unexpected way. Mr. Huggins demonstrated with the spectroscope that in 1866 Sirius was receding from the sun, while he has since made the discovery, which has been confirmed at Greenwich, that since 1881 Sirius has been approaching the sun!

The discovery of the attendant of Sirius, and the measures which have been made thereon, give us an answer to the question—"What is the weight of Sirius?" Let us attempt to illustrate this subject. It must, no doubt, be admitted that the numerical estimates we employ are to be received with a certain degree of caution. The companion of Sirius is a difficult object to observe, and the movements require great delicacy. We are, therefore, hardly as yet in a position to speak with accuracy as to the periodic time in which the companion completes its revolution. We shall, however, using the best observations available, take this time to be forty-nine years. We also know the distance from Sirius to his companion, and

we may take it to be about thirty-seven times the distance from the earth to the sun. It is useful, in the first place, to compare the revolution of the companion around Sirius with the revolution of the outermost planet, Neptune, around the sun. Taking the earth's distance as unity, the radius of the orbit of Neptune is about thirty, and Neptune takes 165 years to accomplish a complete revolution. We have no planet in the solar system at a distance of thirty-seven, but from Kepler's third law it is very easy to calculate that if there were such a planet its periodic time must be about 225 years. We have now the necessary materials for making the comparison between the mass of Sirius and the mass of the sun. A body revolving around Sirius at a certain distance completes its journey in 49 years. A body revolving around the sun at the same distance completes its journey in 225 years. The quicker the body is moving the greater must be the centrifugal force, and consequently the greater must be the attractive power of the central body. It can be easily shown from the principles of dynamics that the attractive power varies inversely as the square of the periodic time. Hence, then, the attractive power of Sirius must bear to the attractive power of the sun the proportion which the square of 225 has to the square of 49. As the distances are in each case supposed to be equal, the attractive powers will be proportional to the masses, and hence we conclude that the mass of Sirius, to-

gether with that of his companion, is to the mass of the sun in the ratio of 20 to 1. We had already learned that Sirius was much brighter than the sun ; now we have learned that is is also much more massive.

Before we leave the consideration of Sirius, there is one additional point of considerable interest which it is necessary to consider. It is remarkable to observe the contrast between the brilliancy of Sirius and his companion. Sirius is a star far transcending all other stars of the first magnitude, while his companion is extremely faint. Even if it were completely withdrawn from the dazzling proximity of Sirius, the companion would be only a small star of the eighth or ninth magnitude, far below the limits of visibility of the unaided eye. To put the matter in numerical language, Sirius is 5,000 times as bright as its companion, but only about twice as heavy ! Here is a very great contrast : and the point will appear even more forcible if we contrast the companion of Sirius with our sun. The companion is *seven times as heavy as our sun* ; seven suns equal to ours in one pan of the scales would only just turn with the companion in the other pan : but, in spite of its inferior bulk, our sun is much more powerful as a light-giver. One hundred of the companions to Sirius would not give as much light as our sun ! This is a result of very considerable significance. It teaches us that besides the great bodies in the universe which attract attention by their brilliancy, there are also other bodies of stu-

pendous mass which have but little brilliancy, probably some of them none at all. This suggests a greatly enhanced conception of the majestic scale of the universe. It almost invites us to the belief that the universe which we behold bears but a small ratio to the far larger part which is invisible in the sombre shades of night. In the wide extent of the material universe we have here and there a star or a mass of gaseous matter sufficiently heated to become luminous, and thus to become visible from the earth ; but our observation of these luminous points can tell us little of the remaining contents of the universe.

From *The Story of the Heavens*, by SIR ROBERT BALL.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. It is *possible to determine by calculation* what it is *impossible to ascertain by experiment.* Compose other sentences using this as a model.

2. Explain in your own words what is meant by the statement : "The light received from a luminous source varies inversely as the square of the distance."

3. Find from your dictionary the meanings of the following words : *photometer, significant, vicinity, ratio, intrinsic, alignment, insignificance, velocity, analogous, perturbation, spectroscope.*

4. (*a*) Rewrite the following sentences with the words in the order in which they would most naturally occur ; (*b*) state the subject

of each sentence ; (*c*) give a reason why the author has put the words in the order in which they actually stand.

(*a*) Wide indeed is the contrast between the splendour of the noonday sun and the feeble twinkling of even the brightest of the stars.

(*b*) In the bright daylight Sirius cannot even be seen.

(*c*) Into such a position our earth never has come and never will come.

(*d*) In making this calculation we have taken the lowest determination of the brightness of Sirius.

(*e*) To the eye of the astronomer Sirius is pursuing his majestic course with a velocity appropriate to his dimensions.

5. Express by single words the phrases in italics :

(*a*) The boy gave the money *of his own free will.*

(*b*) There is another point *of considerable interest.*

(*c*) The water pours over the edge of the precipice *without ceasing.*

(*d*) A lake *under the surface of the earth.*

II. Grammar Exercise

6. What part of speech is each of these words found in *Sirius* ?

(a) *Twinkling, disturbing, comparing, surpassing, moving, creeping, interesting, approaching, dazzling.*

(b) *Surpassed, received, devoted, unaided, isolated, unexpected.*

(c) *Known, seen, unknown, shown.*

XXIX

THE SPACIOUS FIRMAMENT

THE spacious firmament on high,
With all the blue ethereal sky,
And spangled heavens, a shining frame,
Their great Original proclaim.
The unwearied sun from day to day
Does his Creator's power display,
And publishes to every land
The work of an almighty hand.

Soon as the evening shades prevail
The moon takes up the wondrous tale ;
And nightly to the listening earth
Repeats the story of her birth ;
Whilst all the stars that round her burn,
And all the planets in their turn,
Confirm the tidings as they roll,
And spread the truth from pole to pole.

What though in solemn silence all
Move round the dark terrestrial ball?
What though no real voice or sound
Amidst their radiant orbs be found?
In reason's ear they all rejoice
And utter forth a glorious voice,
For ever singing, as they shine,
"The hand that made us is divine."

JOSEPH ADDISON.

XXX

SPEECH AGAINST SLAVERY

I BELIEVE, Sir, that if we will reflect an instant, we shall find that on the same ground on which we are now disposed to proscribe Africa for ever from all possibility of improvement, we ourselves might, in like manner, have been proscribed and for ever shut out from all the blessings which we now enjoy.

There was a time, Sir, which it may be fit sometimes to revive in the remembrance of our countrymen, when even human sacrifices are said to have been offered in this island. But I would peculiarly observe on this day, for it is a case precisely in point, that the very practice of the slave trade once prevailed among us. Slaves, as we may read in Henry's *History of Great Britain*, were formerly an established article of our exports. "Great numbers," he says, "were exported like cattle from the British coast, and were to be seen exposed for sale in the Roman market." It does not distinctly appear by what means they were procured; but there was unquestionably no small resemblance, in this particular point, between the case of our ancestors and that of the present wretched natives of Africa; for the historian tells you that "adultery, witchcraft, and debt, were probably some of the chief sources of supplying the Roman market with British slaves; that prisoners taken in war were

added to the number; and that there might be among them some unfortunate gamesters who, after having lost all their goods, at length staked themselves, their wives, and their children." Every one of these sources of slavery has been stated, and almost precisely in the same terms, to be at this hour a source of slavery in Africa. And these circumstances, Sir, with a solitary instance or two of human sacrifices, furnish the alleged proofs that Africa labours under a natural incapacity for civilization; that it is enthusiasm and fanaticism to think that she can ever enjoy the knowledge and the morals of Europe; that Providence never intended her to rise above a state of barbarism; that Providence has irrevocably doomed her to be only a nursery for slaves for us free and civilized Europeans. Allow of this principle, as applied to Africa, and I should be glad to know why it might not also have been applied to ancient and uncivilized Britain. Why might not some Roman senator, reasoning on the principles of some honourable gentlemen, and pointing to British barbarians, have predicted with equal boldness, "There is a people that will never rise to civilization; there is a people destined never to be free, a people without the understanding necessary for the attainment of useful arts; depressed by the hand of Nature below the level of the human species; and created to form a supply of slaves for the rest of the world"? Might not this have been said, according to the principles which we now hear stated, in all respects

AFRICAN SLAVES ON THE MARCH.

as fairly and as truly of Britain herself, at that period of her history, as it can now be said by us of the inhabitants of Africa?

We, Sir, have long since emerged from barbarism. We have almost forgotten that we were once barbarians. We are now raised to a situation which exhibits a striking contrast to every circumstance by which a Roman might have characterized us, and by which we now characterize Africa. There is, indeed, one thing wanting to complete the contrast, and to clear us altogether from the imputation of acting, even to this hour, as barbarians; for we continue to this hour a barbarous traffic in slaves; we continue it even yet, in spite of all our great and undeniable pretensions to civilization. We were once as obscure among the nations of the earth, as savage in our manners, as debased in our morals, as degraded in our understandings, as these unhappy Africans are at present. But in the lapse of a long series of years, by a progression slow, and for a time almost imperceptible, we have become rich in a variety of acquirements, favoured above measure in the gifts of Providence, unrivalled in commerce, pre-eminent in arts, foremost in the pursuits of philosophy and science, and established in all the blessings of civil society. We are in the possession of peace, of happiness, and of liberty. We are under the guidance of a mild and beneficent religion; and we are protected by impartial laws, and the purest administration of justice. We are living

under a system of government which our own happy experience leads us to pronounce the best and wisest which has ever been framed, a system which has become the admiration of the world. From all these blessings we must for ever have been shut out, had there been any truth in those principles which some gentlemen have not hesitated to lay down as applicable to the case of Africa. Had those principles been true, we ourselves had languished to this hour in that miserable state of ignorance, brutality, and degradation, in which history proves our ancestors to have been immersed. Had other nations adopted these principles in their conduct toward us, had other nations applied to Great Britain the reasoning which some of the senators of this very island now apply to Africa, ages might have passed without our emerging from barbarism; and we, who are enjoying the blessings of British civilization, of British laws, and British liberty, might, at this hour, have been little superior, either in morals, in knowledge, or refinement, to the rude inhabitants of the coast of Guinea.

If, then, we feel that this perpetual confinement in the fetters of brutal ignorance would have been the greatest calamity which could have befallen us; if we view with gratitude and exultation the contrast between the peculiar blessings we enjoy, and the wretchedness of the ancient inhabitants of Britain; if we shudder to think of the misery which would still have overwhelmed us had Great Britain continued

to the present times to be a mart for slaves to the more civilized nations of the world, through some cruel policy of theirs, God forbid that *we* should any longer subject Africa to the same dreadful scourge, and preclude the light of knowledge, which has reached every other quarter of the globe, from having access to her coasts.

WILLIAM PITT.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. Summarize the reasons given why the members of the House should vote against slavery.

2. Point out any devices by which the speaker gave emphasis to his ideas, e.g. repetition—" If we feel . . . if we view . . . if we shudder."

3. Use in sentences : a case precisely in point ; a solitary instance; a state of barbarism ; a striking contrast ; pre-eminent in arts ; impartial laws ; to lay down a principle.

4. Express in simpler language :

(*a*) " And these circumstances, sir, with a solitary instance or two of human sacrifices, furnish the alleged proofs that Africa labours under a natural incapacity for civilization ; that it is enthusiasm and fanaticism to think that she can ever enjoy the knowledge and the morals of Europe."

(*b*) " But in the lapse of a long series of years, by a progression slow, and for a time almost imperceptible, we have become rich in a variety of acquirements, favoured above measure in the gifts of Providence, unrivalled in commerce, pre-eminent in arts, foremost in the pursuits of philosophy and science, and established in all the blessings of civil society."

5. Find words similar in meaning to: *precisely*, *resemblance*, *incapacity*, *fanaticism*, *irrevocably*, *predicted*, *imputation*, *pretensions*, *imperceptible*, *beneficent*, *degradation*, *calamity*, *exultation*, *policy*.

6. Write out a speech which you think might be delivered by a person addressing an audience on "Cruelty to Animals."

7. Point out three metaphors in "A Speech Against Slavery."

II. Grammar Exercises

8. Point out the antecedents of the relative pronouns in:

(*a*) Yonder is the sword that I spoke of.

(*b*) We were at the mercy of two hundred savage Mongols and Thibetans, who had vowed to have our lives.

(*c*) At the bottom of the stairs I met my dear Evans, into whose hands I confided him.

(*d*) On the fifth of November, which is the beginning of summer in those parts, the weather was very hazy.

(*e*) The snow began to fill the courtyard, against which my efforts were futile.

(*f*) They were laden with baskets full of meat, which had been provided by the King's orders.

(*g*) Six of the crew, of whom I was one, let down the boat into the sea.

(*h*) One can look down the whole length of the prodigious trench into which the river plunges.

XXXI

THE ORIGIN OF ROAST PORK

MANKIND, says a Chinese manuscript, which my friend M. was obliging enough to read and explain to me, for the first seventy thousand ages ate their meat raw, clawing or biting it from the living animal, just as they do in Abyssinia to this day. This period is not obscurely hinted at by their great Confucius in the second chapter of his *Mundane Mutations*, where he designates a kind of golden age by the term Cho-fang, literally, the Cook's Holiday. The manuscript goes on to say that the art of roasting, or rather broiling (which I take to be the elder brother) was accidentally discovered in the manner following. The swine-herd Ho-ti, having gone out into the woods one morning, as his manner was, to collect mast for his hogs, left his cottage in the care of his eldest son, Bo-bo, a great lubberly boy, who, being fond of playing with fire, as younkers of his age commonly are, let some sparks escape into a bundle of straw, which kindling quickly, spread the conflagration over every part of their poor mansion, till it was reduced to ashes. Together with the cottage (a sorry ante-diluvian make-shift of a building, you may think it), what was of much more importance, a fine litter of new-farrowed pigs, no less than nine in number, perished. China pigs have been esteemed a luxury

all over the East, from the remotest periods that we read of. Bo-bo was in the utmost consternation, as you may think, not so much for the sake of the tenement, which his father and he could easily build up again with a few dry branches, and the labour of an hour or two, at any time, as for the loss of the pigs. While he was thinking what he should say to his father, and wringing his hands over the smoking remnants of one of those untimely sufferers, an odour assailed his nostrils unlike any scent which he had before experienced. What could it proceed from? Not from the burnt cottage—he had smelt that smell before—indeed, this was by no means the first accident of the kind which had occurred through the negligence of this unlucky young fire-brand. Much less did it resemble that of any known herb, weed, or flower. A premonitory moistening at the same time overflowed his nether lip. He knew not what to think. He next stooped down to feel the pig, if there were any signs of life in it. He burnt his fingers, and to cool them he applied them in his booby fashion to his mouth. Some of the crumbs of the scorched skin had come away with his fingers, and for the first time in his life (in the world's life, indeed, for before him no man had known it) he tasted—*crackling*! Again he felt and fumbled at the pig. It did not burn him so much now; still, he licked his fingers from a sort of habit. The truth at length broke into his slow understanding that it was the pig that smelt so, and the

pig that tasted so delicious ; and surrendering himself up to the new-born pleasure, he fell to tearing up whole handfuls of the scorched skin with the flesh next it, and was cramming it down his throat in his beastly fashion, when his sire entered amid the smoking rafters, armed with retributory cudgel, and, finding how affairs stood, began to rain blows upon the young rogue's shoulders, as thick as hail-stones, which Bo-bo heeded not any more than if they had been flies. The tickling pleasure which he experienced in his lower regions had rendered him quite callous to any inconveniences that he might feel in those remote quarters. His father might lay on, but he could not beat him from his pig till he had fairly made an end of it, when, becoming a little more sensible of his situation, something like the following dialogue ensued.

"You graceless whelp, what have you got there devouring ? Is it not enough that you have burnt me down three houses with your dog's tricks, and be hanged to you ! but you must be eating fire, and I know not what. What have you got there, I say ?"

"O father, the pig, the pig ! do come and taste how nice the burnt pig eats."

The ears of Ho-ti tingled with horror. He cursed his son, and he cursed himself that ever he should beget a son that should eat burnt pig.

Bo-bo, whose scent was wonderfully sharpened since morning, soon raked out another pig, and fairly rend-

ing it asunder, thrust the lesser half by main force into the fists of Ho-ti, still shouting out, " Eat, eat, eat the burnt pig, father, only taste—O Lord ! "—with suchlike barbarous ejaculations, cramming all the while as if he would choke.

Ho-ti trembled every joint while he grasped the abominable thing, wavering whether he should not put his son to death for an unnatural young monster, when the crackling scorching his fingers, as it had done his son's, and applying the same remedy to them, he in his turn tasted some of its flavour, which, make what sour mouths he would for a pretence, proved not altogether displeasing to him. In conclusion, (for the manuscript here is a little tedious) both father and son fairly set down to the mess, and never left off till they had despatched all that remained of the litter.

Bo-bo was strictly enjoined not to let the secret escape, for the neighbours would certainly have stoned them for a couple of abominable wretches, who could think of improving upon the good meat which God had sent them. Nevertheless, strange stories got about. It was observed that Ho-ti's cottage was burnt down now more frequently than ever. Nothing but fires from this time forward. Some would break out in broad day, others in the night-time. As often as the sow farrowed, so sure was the house of Ho-ti to be in a blaze ; and Ho-ti himself, which was the more remarkable, instead of chastizing his son, seemed to grow more indulgent to him than ever. At length

HO-TI'S COTTAGE WAS BURNT DOWN FREQUENTLY.

they were watched, the terrible mystery discovered, and father and son summoned to take their trial at Pekin, then an inconsiderable assize town. Evidence was given, the obnoxious food itself produced in court, and verdict about to be pronounced, when the foreman of the jury begged that some of the burnt pig, of which the culprits stood accused, might be handed into the box. He handled it, and they all handled it ; and burning their fingers, as Bo-bo and his father had done before them, and nature prompting to each of them the same remedy, against the face of all the facts, and the clearest charge which judge had ever given,—to the surprise of the whole court, townsfolks, strangers, reporters, and all present—without leaving the box, or any manner of consulta-

tion whatever, they brought in a simultaneous verdict of not guilty.

The judge, who was a shrewd fellow, winked at the manifest iniquity of the decision; and when the court was dismissed, went privily, and bought up all the pigs that could be had for love or money. In a few days his Lordship's town-house was observed to be on fire. The thing took wing, and now there was nothing to be seen but fires in every direction. Fuel and pigs grew enormously dear all over the district. The insurance offices one and all shut up shop, people built slighter and slighter every day, until it was feared that the very science of architecture would in no long time be lost to the world. Thus this custom of firing houses continued, till in process of time, says my manuscript, a sage arose, like our Locke, who made a discovery, that the flesh of swine, or indeed of any other animal, might be cooked (*burnt*, as they called it) without the necessity of consuming a whole house to dress it. Then first began the rude form of a gridiron. Roasting by the string or spit came in a century or two later, I forget in whose dynasty. By such slow degrees, concludes the manuscript, do the most useful and seemingly the most obvious arts make their way among mankind.

From *The Essays of Elia*, by CHARLES LAMB.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. Express in other words the same sense :

(*a*) " An odour assailed his nostrils."

(*b*) " His sire entered amid the smoking rafters, armed with retributory cudgel."

(*c*) " The tickling pleasure, which he experienced in his lower regions, had rendered him quite callous to any inconveniences he might feel in those remote quarters."

2. Use in sentences : A Chinese manuscript ; a great lubberly boy ; in the utmost consternation ; amid the smoking rafters ; as thick as hailstones ; the lesser half ; by main force ; for a pretence ; against the face of all the facts ; to the surprise of the whole court ; a simultaneous verdict ; a shrewd fellow.

3. Tell the story in your own words without the use of dialogue.

4. Write in a humorous style, " My first attempt at fishing."

5. In " some would break out in broad day, others in the night-time," " some " and " others " are a pair of corresponding words. Make a list of as many similar pairs as you can find in this extract.

II. Grammar Exercises

6. Make a list of the conjunctions and relative pronouns which connect clauses in the paragraph beginning : " Bo-bo was strictly enjoined."

7. What part of speech is *as* in the following ? —

(*a*) Bo-bo had never tasted such delicious food *as* he was now eating.

(*b*) *As* Ho-ti had never heard of roast pork, he was horrified to find his son eating the crackling.

(*c*) The judge bought *as* many pigs *as* he could.

(*d*) With them it was the same *as* it had been with Ho-ti and Bo-bo.

XXXII

AMBER

AMBER lies some five miles from Jeypore. After leaving one of the pink-and-white gates of the city, the road extends across a plain, and on both sides of the way are ruins. These ruins are widespread, and are the wrecks of comparatively modern buildings. There are the remains of gardens, temples, and palaces, and of the many houses, great and small, which hang about palaces. It is a matter of some surprise to see structures of so great a degree and of such recent growth abandoned to decay. But this is India, and in India can be seen outside many a city wall what destruction may be wrought by the whim of Kings.

Along this road of mistakes the traveller drives for three and a half miles until he comes to a range of low hills, in the heart of which lies Amber. At the foot of the hills he changes a carriage for an elephant, both being provided by the princely hospitality of the Maharaja.

The elephant I travelled by was covered, as to his trunk and head, with primitive paintings in red, blue, and yellow. He knelt, and on his back was a square seat covered by a white counterpane. As there was a low rail at either end of the seat, it had the appearance of a bed prepared for two children. This bed is reached by means of a ladder, and on this bed the rider

sits, while his feet rest on a thing of rope and wood, such as men dangle from who paint the outsides of ships.

The driver of the elephant was more wonderful than his antediluvian beast. He was a little brown man, with a turban of scarlet and gold. He wore a dark-green velvet jacket, trimmed with emerald green, and his forearms were enveloped in white linen sleeves. By a mere touch he made the ton of flesh move with the precision and delicacy of a hydraulic crane.

In the course of time the traveller will come from Jeypore to the foot of the hills in a motor-car, and then, in the matter of travel, the very ancient and the very new will meet : but the turbaned mahout will always be more marvellous and more to be admired than the chauffeur with his goggles.

As the elephant moves he appears to be extraordinarily full of joints, and his tread is as spongy as is that of an old butler. He stalks up a sloping road on the hill-side and through a gateway in a wall. This wall marks the outer confines of Amber. It is cracked and rent, and presents many and grievous breaches, but it is for all that a fierce wall. It has tooth-shaped battlements, and it follows its course with savage determination. Nothing daunts it. It has to make a circuit of the city, and the circuit is made. This persistent wall can be followed for miles. It dives down into a ravine ; it crosses the trench at the bottom ; it

climbs up the cliff on the other side. It winds over a stony down. It follows the sharp crest of a long ridge, so that the ridge looks like the body of a colossal lizard, and the battlements like spines along the backbone of the beast. No obstacle stands in the way of this circuitous wall, and it turns aside for neither crag nor gully.

Beyond the gate the road enters a gorge between bare hills, ragged with stiff bushes or prickly pear, and with many loose stones. At the end of the gorge is a valley shut in by hills and by the still determined wall. On the summit of the highest hill is a deserted fort, while on a low ridge in the valley is the deserted palace.

The town of Amber covers each slope of the ridge, together with all that part of the valley which gives access to it.

The palace stands well—a fine, solid, square mass of masonry with white walls, stout buttresses, many cupolas, and domes. Its monotony is broken by arcades and passages with columns, by an occasional verandah, or the trellised walls of hidden courts. There are very few windows in the palace that look across the valley, so that the great bastion-sided edifice has rather the bearing of a fortress than of an abode of kings.

At the foot of the palace hill is a lake, with an island of gardens. The island has around it an embankment, in which are steps leading down to the water. Its

gardens are in terraces, traversed by paved paths and covered walks, with here and there a summer-house or cool court. Upon the island and its gardens a woeful ruin has fallen. A wild undergrowth has spread over it, so that there is now reflected on the surface of the lake little more than a lonely arch, a crumbling balustrade, or a heap of stones covered with a cobweb of briars and brambles. So utterly desolate is this once laughter-haunted spot that the poor pleasance may be a garden of Babylon, and the little stairs may be hiding their broken steps in the waters of Babylon.

The way to the palace is by a long, pinched street, paved with cobble stones, which winds up hill through narrow gateways and by old walls until it reaches the royal courtyard.

Of the palace itself there is little to be said. It is maintained in perfect state and its halls and corridors are endless. It inclines to gaudiness, and serves to show how little is the step between what would be grand and what may be tawdry.

Near the entrance to the palace is a small temple dedicated to Kali. That Kali should be the goddess of the dead city is possibly not unfitting. Kali is the most terrible of all Hindu deities. She is the personification of whatever is horrible. Her breast is decked with human heads, and her girdle is made of human hands. Her lips breathe only murder and destruction. Venom fills her veins, and her tenderest

THE RUINS OF AMBER.

mercies are cruel. Her shrine is the only one left at Amber where men still worship.

The temple is vault-like and gloomy, and the flaming red image of the goddess grins from the depths of a threatening cavern. At the feet of this Diva of the shambles is a heap of thick, unwholesome sand, upon which a live goat is sacrificed every morning, and the hideous iron knives with which the deed is done stand by the sand heap. Much red paint, much gilt and faded tinsel make hideous this place of execution, while a clammy shadow laden with the smell of incense and the odour of blood clings to all who enter from the sunlight which streams without upon the temple steps.

Such is Our Lady of Amber.

The whole city can be viewed from a balcony which juts out from the palace wall. It is a city of ruins, utterly silent, empty, and forlorn. It is " the woman who has been forgotten." The streets are narrow and tortuous ; some are mere tracks between piles of stones, some are blocked by the debris of fallen buildings. There are houses which have survived the hand of ruin, but they are, for the most part, roofless, and pigeons roost in the upper chambers. Gates stand open ; gardens are a tangle of weeds and cactus ; windows have become shapeless holes, and verandahs are festooned by aggressive creepers.

Here one side of a house has fallen away, revealing bare rooms with doors that lead into space, and ragged

stairs that climb up blindly to the sky, and stand above the crumbling wall like fragments of a turret.

From the palace heights one can look down into courtyards with still, on one side, a great gateway, and, on the other, steps leading to a barren hall. Trees are growing in the court. Their roots have lifted up the flags and have made of the fountain a jumble of marble.

The once walled-in zenana—the holy of holies—is now open to every breeze that blows ; the sun pours into the ladies' inner chamber, and the rain beats upon its marble floor. Here and there is a temple with nothing of its dignity left but half a dome, a few broken arches, or a row of pillars held together by the twining branches of a sacrilegious creeper.

Peacocks strut among the ruins and haunt the untidy jungle that once was a market-place or a noble's garden.

A tribe of monkeys who have taken possession of this skeleton of a capital play about the housetops and such parapets as still lean over the streets. They are grey-headed, wrinkled beasts, and they look so like little chattering old men that, to those who believe in the transmigration of souls, they may be the restless spirits of people who once busied themselves in the old town.

A few peasants live among the unkempt ruins, with as little comfort as a tribe of cave-dwellers on a hill-side. Their pretence of finding a home in the melancholy

stone-heap makes but a last mockery of the once arrogant and kingly town.

Amber is dead! The silence of eternity has fallen upon its dumb streets, its sightless windows, its altars that hear not; and those who still strive to dwell within its walls are as scampering rats in a mortuary.

From *The Other Side of the Lantern*,
by SIR FREDERICK TREVES.

EXERCISES

1. From works of reference find the meanings of: the Maharaja; antediluvian; a hydraulic crane; Jeypore; the turbaned mahout; prickly pear; cupolas; balustrade; Babylon; personification; Diva; debris; zenana; the transmigration of souls; the holy of holies.

I. Composition Exercises

2. Point out any words and phrases which seem to you well chosen, e.g. "The ton of flesh"; "the once laughter-haunted spot"; "a tangle of weeds and cactus"; "festooned by aggressive creepers"; "its dumb streets."

3. Make a list of the comparisons used in this passage, e.g.: The monkeys are like little chattering old men.

4. "Peacocks *strut* among the ruins." Make a list of words used to describe the motions of animals and people, e.g. *amble, saunter*.

II. Grammar Exercises

5. Mark the enlargements of the subject, complement, and object in:

(*a*) The ruins are the wrecks of comparatively modern buildings.
(*b*) On his back was a square seat covered by a white counterpane.
(*c*) Beyond the gate the road enters a gorge between bare hills.
(*d*) There are very few windows in the palace.
(*e*) Mr. Weller, having plenty of time at his disposal, sauntered down as far as the Mansion House.

(*f*) Then, looking carefully at the pen and dusting down the table, Sam tucked up the cuffs of his coat, squared his elbows, and composed himself to write.

(*g*) The priests, keeping their night watch on the summit, instantly sounded the alarm.

(*h*) Levelling his neck for flight, the eagle sees the fish-hawk emerge from the sea, struggling with his prey.

6. What kind of a phrase (noun, adjective, adverb) is each of those underlined in these sentences?—

(*a*) Amber lies *some five miles from Jeypore.*

(*b*) *After leaving the pink-and-white gates of the city,* the road extends *across a plain.*

(*c*) There is now reflected on the surface of the lake *little more than a lovely arch, a crumbling balustrade, or a heap of stones.*

(*d*) The way *to the palace* is by a long street, *paved with cobble-stones.*

(*e*) To ladies and gentlemen who are not in the habit of devoting themselves practically to the science of penmanship, *writing a letter* is no easy task.

(*f*) He knew not *what to think.*

(*g*) Down, *rapid as an arrow from heaven,* descends the distant object of his attention.

7. In which of the following sentences can *and it*, *and he*, or *and they* be substituted for the relative pronoun? Do you notice any other difference between these sentences and the rest?

(*a*) Mount the horse that has a white star upon its forehead.

(*b*) The cat is less of a companion than the dog, which is the chief friend of man among the animals.

(*c*) There are two cities called London, one in England and one in Ontario; but the London which is in England is much larger than the other.

(*d*) The men who remained in the column of march advanced more rapidly than the stragglers.

(*e*) I was startled by the sudden appearance of two strangers, who stepped out into the road from behind a hedge.

XXXIII

PIRATE VERSUS SHARK

At Mangalore four of our native seamen left. In their place came a foul-visaged, cross-eyed, lath-like specimen of his kind, in the prime of life : one who had probably spent the greater part of his existence in robbery afloat and ashore—he and three others, three scoundrels lesser in degree. He turned out to be their chief, shorn of whose leadership they lacked nerve and resource enough to act for themselves.

We left that port with some coal and a fill-up of general cargo for Negapatam and other ports up the bay. One dark night, some fifty miles south of Cochin, the chief scoundrel was caught putting over the lee-bow a partially shrouded signal-light to their pirate-confederates on shore—as we subsequently knew the light to be. His three more immediate companions in crime remained unobserved in the darkness, and—as was afterwards found out—scuttled away, and were unsuspected of complicity in the affair until their villainous leader had treated us to his unique bid for freedom and possession of the brig. A smart breeze, and a stand of serviceable Sniders distributed among our whites, enabled us to keep the pirates off and get safely away. In the act of guiding his followers, the chief had been knocked senseless by a big, keen, middle-aged Irishman who acted as a carpenter-

seaman, and who, along with a young American mate, made up our five white men.

Without further mishap we fetched Cape Comorin, and were contentedly wasting the hours of a beautiful Sunday in a dead calm. About four bells in the afternoon watch a big, ugly shark appeared some three fathoms off our port side, well aft. There he floated, lazily taking in the warmth, his dorsal fin now above the surface, now a hand's-breadth below. It was sickening to see the cool devilishness of his insolent movements. Our Cingalese cook steward threw several lumps of coal at him, as the fin stuck up high and dry ; yet he took small notice of them. The mate was for baiting a shark-hook with a lump of fat pork, the skipper for trying a Snider bullet on him. But our pirate saw in him a way of escape from the penal establishment of Andaman—and a prize to boot, if his plot proved successful. He, still ironed, was secured by a line close to the port rail ; this was so that he should not fall sick and cheat justice by a too narrow confinement below, nor elude his proper deserts by a leap over the side. He had watched the shark for a while, listening to the skipper and mate above him. When they spoke of catching or shooting the fish, he asked to be allowed to fight it with a sheath-knife—freedom to be his reward if he won ; if he lost—well, in that case, he pointed out, he would be off their hands and would give them no further trouble.

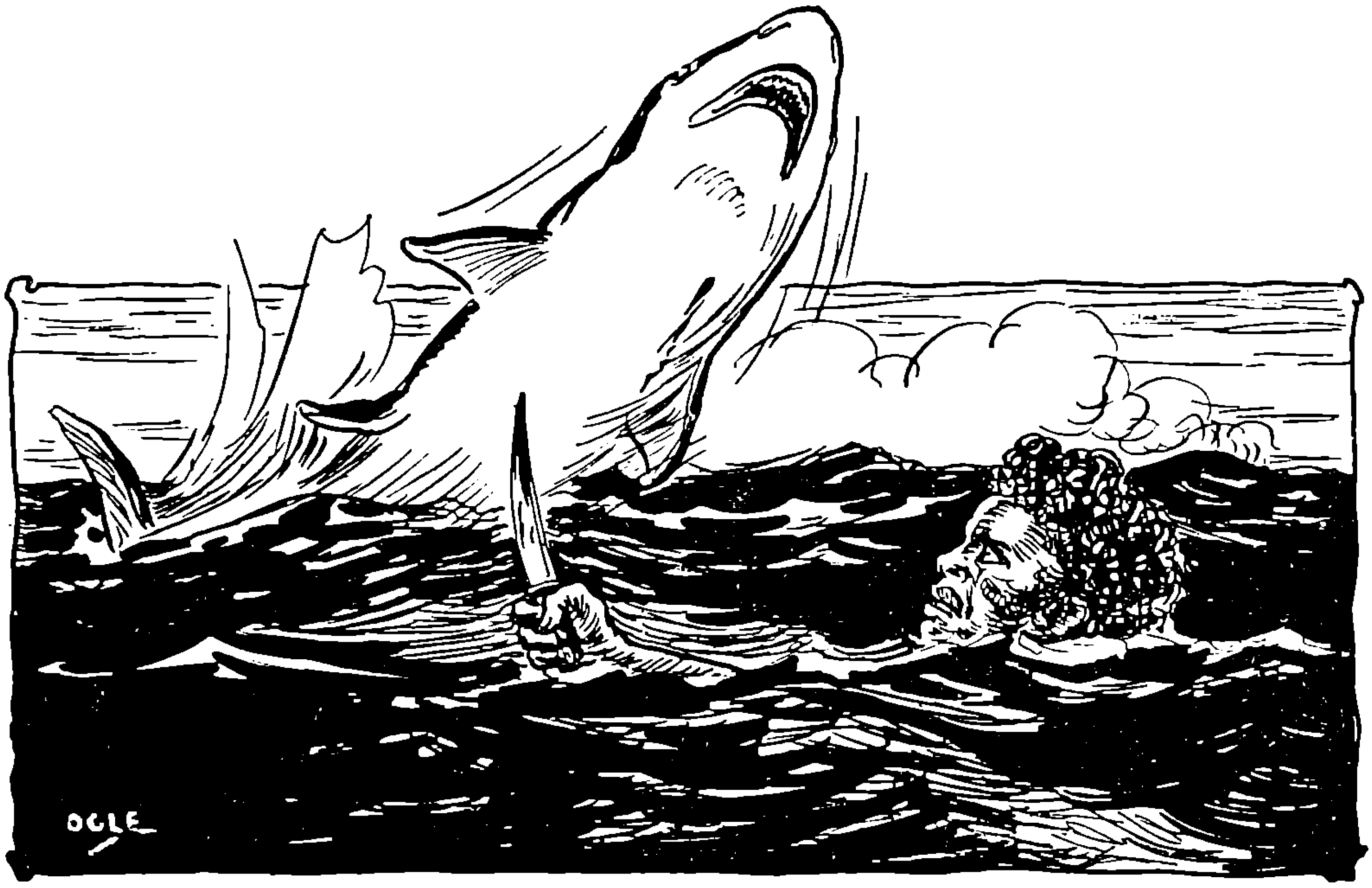
It was a novel and daring suggestion. Hardened though the skipper was, this offer took all the wind out of his mental sails and set him in a verbal calm. The thought never entered his head that underlying it all was a devilish trick, a purpose that meant death to every white man abroad. The mate said he had heard of blacks fighting sharks as a common thing, and very rarely getting the worst of the battle. Perhaps, he said, the fellow had many a time done the same thing. It certainly seemed to be no more to him than a bout with fists would be to the average A.B.

At last sanction was given, and the news flew through the brig. Every man fore and aft dropped the thing in hand, most of them to watch the fight, but three for a more sinister reason. Those who had been asleep leapt on deck, and the sheath-knives of all hands were brought to a muster. Of these the man was allowed to make his choice, and the one selected was put on the grindstone. Meanwhile the gladiator was prepared by being cast adrift from the rail, and having his leg-irons taken off.

Five minutes later the man, completely stripped, was on the rail, covered by the skipper's Snider. His wrist-irons were off ; the knife was in his hand, and his opponent still basked idly near the surface about six fathoms away. It was to be a fight to the death, or driving the shark off completely—so we, in our ignorance of the plot afloat, were given to understand. The human antagonist had been permitted to

grease himself with pork-fat from heel to crown in order that the water might offer less resistance to his movements ; in itself that fat was a most clinching proof of his hopelessly renegade condition, for he was a Mohammedan. Not a tremor marked him in face or limb. He was playing for a big stake, much bigger than we thought. Old at the frightful game or new to it, going to his death between those triple rows of horrible teeth or to victory and freedom, he fully won the silent applause of every white man there, even although he had attempted to give us over to the merciless hands of his kind.

The end of the brace had been lowered to the water's edge, and the brace was belayed to a pin in the rail. Down the line the pirate slid. Every man crept to the rail and craned his neck over it. The challenger entered the water without causing the slightest noise. Just before his head went in he took the keen six-inch blade from his mouth, and it was at that brief instant we saw the set, grim look on his dark, ugly, greasy face. Then down he sank. He was gone so long that we thought he had drowned himself. Never was man more wronged. Whilst we were thus watching, we saw the shark's little pilot fish darting excitedly about his master's great head. But the eighteen-footer merely came a few yards nearer the brig. Perhaps content in his superiority of size, strength, and mastership, he lay there barely moving. Then the captain raised his rifle to give him a repentant bullet, but lowered



THE SHARK SHOT CLEAR INTO THE AIR.

it again without doing so, we the while hardly cognizant of the act, so absorbed was every pair of eyes that could get above the rail.

How those seconds dragged. In our minds we had wished the shark-fighter an everlasting good-bye, deeming him a clever fellow to have escaped the Andamans in such a manner. Then came a hurried whisper, "He's there!" Ere the news could be passed fore and aft, we saw the upward flash of a black body and a gleaming knife in the blue water directly under the shark; they seemed to have been driven up by some powerful force. The next moment the shark shot clear into the air, like a porpoise or flying-fish. As he went blood dyed the surface

under him, and we saw that there was a great wound in his stomach. The pirate appeared above the water, gasping, yet only for about half-a-minute. He moved into the clearer, stiller water farther off, where he again disappeared. We watched here, there, everywhere, within a cable's length, but did not have long to wait.

"Here he comes!" shouted the mate, silence being now out of the question.

There they were, scarcely three fathoms away. At the moment in which we saw them, the shark was in the act of diving, and his great cross-ended tail was out of the water, showing on one side a gash that had reached the backbone. Plainly the pirate's intention was now to bleed the fish to death by tapping the spinal artery, and in the meantime to rob him of his second-best weapon. Before we could wonder whether the shark would turn or go under us, he had dived, leaving the panting gladiator at the surface of the troubled waters. Now it was that the three other pirates were missing from the place they had occupied just abaft the fore-rigging. Not that we knowingly missed them. Our conception of the matter was merely by way of instinct; we knew it vaguely yet correctly, as was afterwards proved when the affair was discussed in detail.

"Throw him a line!" cried the captain, willing to spare the man further risk. There was a rush to obey the order, but ere a line could be thrown the

pirate was off into quieter water, the better to see his foe returning to the attack, should he come. There the man remained for some minutes, now sinking to reconnoitre, then on the surface filling his lungs, never still ; for in quietude now lay his greatest danger. We were thinking and hoping that the finned tiger had been beaten, when the cook gave a warning cry that he was slowly coming back. There he was, rising slowly, as if almost spent—as well he might be ; but the tiger of the seas dies a terribly hard death, as all deep-water seamen know. We again gave the shark-fighter notice of his adversary's return and the details of it, never dreaming that our shouted warnings were so many signals of preparation to the swarthy scoundrels who were even then making ready to send us hurrying prematurely into eternity. The shark-fighter struck off for the brig's head. So good a swimmer was he that in a very few minutes after disappearing forward he had passed along the starboard side and rounded the vessel's stern to take the dying shark in the rear.

Bang ! rang out a rifle from we knew not where, and the mate, standing in the fore-starboard corner of the poop, gave a cry of pain and gripped the rail at his side. For all we knew or could imagine to the contrary the bullet might have come from the still, inflexible blue overhead. Instantly, a newer, a madder, a more desperate hurly-burly began, in which the pirate in the water, together with his vanquished foe, was

forgotten. All, actuated by one impulse, one thought, one question, sprang about and inboard. Every man amongst us stared wildly and stupidly at his fellows. There was no time to particularize as to actions.

"Mutiny," yelled the skipper, spasmodically bringing his Snider from the deck and making to put the butt to his shoulder. As he raised the weapon, however, a second report cracked on the still air. The rifle was knocked aside, he sprang half around with it. A bullet intended for his breast had struck the barrel, glancing off to expend itself on the smooth waters of the ocean. At such times men see things rapidly, see everything within the radius of sight. We saw a musket-barrel poking out of the cabin skylight, and behind it the face of one of the three bronzed, lithe-limbed scoundrels who had shipped with the more daring shark-fighter at Mangalore. The cabin-door was almost closed, and in the narrow space left peeped a similar face and another rifle-barrel. Last of all, we saw the chief villain of them all making swift, silent strokes for the brig. Here ended our half-stupefied inaction.

"Stop dat coolie vrom poarding again! Shoot him, knife him, brain him—anyt'ing you can—but keep him off-poard!" shouted the skipper; then he sent a bullet crashing at the face in the skylight. . . .

At this moment the young mate saved the situation. He had found that his hurt was only a flesh one in the

muscle of his left arm, and had bound it up with his torn shirt. Seizing a marline-spike, he swung himself off the corner of the poop, and on to the rail, then noiselessly to the deck. Then, with his gaze fastened on the musket-barrel poking out of that slit in the cabin-doorway, he crept along, almost flat, to the bulk-head. The instant he was within striking distance, he crashed the thick end of the spike down inside the door-jamb, at the full length of his arm, his side actually brushing the barrel of the Snider at that moment. It was chance-work, but gloriously successful. The blow knocked a hole in the top of the native's head, and in a second the mate had jerked out he Snider, drawn the door to, and barred it on our side by putting the musket-barrel through the big brass ring and crossing it outside the jambs. . . .

The mutineers were now as so many rats in a trap. Yet what were we to do with them ? They had all our stores, and the skipper's charts ; and even with a fine fair wind we could not make port under several days.

At this moment we heard two shots from the poop, and soon afterwards learnt that they were fired at another head in the skylight, and at the shark-fighter. During the interval the latter had, by aid of the rudder-chains and Heaven only knows what agility, climbed up to the stern rail, over which our vigilant skipper had seen his ferocious head appearing, the formidable knife between his teeth. The shots,

however, sad to relate, failed to make the desired impression, and the pirate deemed discretion the better part of valour, returning (we could only suppose) to the shoulder of the rudder and its accommodating chains. . . .

We began to surmise that the fellow's strength had given out, and that he had tumbled into the sea and been drowned. Then the supple-limbed cook-steward (probably remembering some of his own monkeyish tricks) suggested that he for whom we so anxiously sought might have entered the cabin by the stern window—the brig, owing to her antiquity, possessing that evidence of other days. At that we collectively gasped. If the pirate was in with his confederates, as we now began to think them, we should have to look sharp and act ditto. And if one man had gone in, what was to prevent all four of them coming out under cover of darkness, fully armed, and shooting us down like so many dogs?

Again the mate saved us, this time even more effectually. Without a word to the skipper, he said in his hearty fashion, "Come along, boys, I guess we'll square the yards of the black scoundrels." . . . Gladly we followed him, feeling that we had here a commander worthy of our service. After procuring two large augers from the carpenter's chest, together with some oil and lights, we descended into the main hold, where, under his direction, we worked our way aft over the cargo. When we were under the cabin

he stopped, and then set two of us to work boring holes through the deck above—holes which would have their upper openings in unobserved parts of the cabin floor. . . . The next five minutes laid bare his intention, which was, he said, to sulphurize the blacks in the trap above. He brought all the necessary materials for the purpose—iron pots, sulphur, charcoal, trays on which to stand the pots, and (conclusive proof of his inventiveness and resource) two large tin funnels to fit over the fires and conduct the deadly fumes into the cabin—all having come from within the paint-locker and the carpenter's shop. Matters were quickly arranged, the fires lighted, and we scuttled on deck, replacing the main hatch and its tarpaulin after our exit. Now there was nothing to do but to await results, the most alert watcher of all being the skipper, who stood on the port quarter with his Snider trained on the stern window, over which a bundle of sacks and mats had been let down, and securely fastened by ropes. . . .

The afternoon wore on apace. We began to wonder if the night would close in on us before a change occurred in our conditions. . . . Then night gathered round us, and our anchor-light was hung over the stern in such manner as to show if anything happened to the immense plug in the stern window. About an hour after this the expected occurred. The bundle of sacks and rope was seen to be agitated. Some one was hacking at it on the inside. The

captain, his nerves evidently drawn to high-tension mark, levelled his Snider carefully at the bundle. Presently it fell away, and out of the aperture came the shark-fighter, about his mouth a white cloth, probably saturated with water obtained in the cabin. The light from the globular lamp shone on his evil face, making it appear like that of an enraged fiend. As a wild cat after prey he snatched at the rudder chains and got a grip of them with one hand ; in the other we saw the knife with which he had slain the shark. This was the critical moment with the skipper, who knew it and discharged one of his remaining cartridges. He missed ; but the climber, most likely startled by the shot, almost lost his hold and dropped the knife in a wild effort to keep himself from falling. Not an instant later over the taffrail he bounded, mad desperation marking his face and movements. Without a moment's pause he tore along the poop, leapt down to the main-deck, and rushed forward, at his heels every one of us, each man with some kind of weapon, the skipper fumbling his last charge into the Snider, and Shells endeavouring to brain the villain with a hand-spike. Without any further opposition he mounted the fo'c'sle, literally ran out along the bowsprit, and plunged into the sea. We never saw him again.

Throughout that night we waited, hungry, wishing with all our might for dawn. When it came, care was expended in opening the cabin-door, the skipper

standing by with his one remaining cartridge for any pirate who chanced to have fight left in him; but it was not needed. We found the three stretched helpless, and forthwith dragged them out to the open deck, there to find two of them dead. From the other, who slowly revived, and was ironed before he had strength enough to do any harm, we learnt that they had been in touch all through with the shark-fighter, and that the latter's mad battle in the water had been a preconcerted affair, done to draw away our attention whilst the other three took possession of the cabin and the Sniders. . . . So far as we could ascertain, our prisoner was the fellow who first fired from the skylight, the evidence being the fact that his face was cut in all directions by splintered glass: otherwise he was unhurt. The last we heard of him was his deportation to the Andaman Islands, but for how long a time I do not remember.

From *My Vagabondage*, by J. E. PATTERSON.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. Make a list of the most striking descriptive phrases in this story, e.g.: "A foul-visaged, cross-eyed, lath-like specimen of his kind"; "the set, grim look on his dark, ugly, greasy face."

2. Express in your own words the meaning of: "In the prime of life"; "the offer took all the wind out of his mental sails and set him in a verbal calm"; "in itself that fat was a most clinching proof of his hopelessly renegade condition—for he was a Mohammedan"; "the swarthy scoundrels who were even then making ready to send

us hurrying prematurely into eternity" ; "the pirate deemed discretion the better part of valour" ; "conclusive proof of his inventiveness and resource" ; "a preconcerted affair."

3. Notice that the writer adds vividness to his story by the occasional use of short sentences. Write out a few of these, e.g. : "Then down he sank." "How those seconds dragged." "The afternoon wore on apace."

4. Condense the story to about one-third of its length.

II. Grammar Exercises

5. What part of speech is each of the words italicized in the following ?—

(*a*) I determined that I would count *fifty*.

(*b*) There were *fifty* soldiers in each platoon.

(*c*) A large part of Russia is a *flat* plain.

(*d*) This piece of land formed a *flat* where there was some grass.

(*e*) The gardener must *thin* his seedlings if they are to grow large and sturdy.

(*f*) A tall *thin* man dressed in *black*.

(*g*) The pot has told the kettle that it is *black*.

(*h*) The bootboy will *black* the shoes.

6. (*a*) All this time I was constantly burrowing in the snow.

(*b*) We were taking great care.

(*c*) Only one man was moving at a time.

Why did the author of these sentences not write *burrowed*, *took*, and *moved* instead of *was burrowing*, etc. ?

7. In "This period is not obscurely hinted at by the great Confucius" (p. 172) the simple verb "hinted" and the particle "at" form a compound verb expressing a single meaning, and they could be replaced by the word "mentioned.' From the extracts in this book make a list of six compound verbs of this kind, and for each of them give a single verb having the same meaning.

XXXIV

AUTUMN

THIN grasses, perfectly white, bleached by sun and dew, stood in a bunch ; their seeds had fallen, the last dregs of sap had dried within them, there was nothing left but the bare stalks. A creeper of bramble fenced round one side of the white grass bunch, and brown leaves were visible on the surface of the ground through the interstices of the spray. So thick were the haws on a bush of thorn opposite that they tinted the hedge a red colour among the yellowing hawthorn leaves. To this red hue the blackberries that were not ripe, the thick dry red sorrel stalks, a bright canker on a briar almost as bright as a rose, added their colours. Already the foliage of the bushes had been thinned, and it was possible to see through the upper parts of the boughs. The sunlight, therefore, not only touched their outer surfaces, but passed through and lit up the branches within, and the wild fruit upon them.

Though the sky was clear and blue between the clouds, that is, without mist or haze, the sunbeams were coloured the faintest yellow, as they always are on a ripe autumn day. This yellow shone back from grass and leaves, from bough and tree-trunk, and seemed to stain the ground. It is very pleasant to the eyes, a soft, delicate light, that gives another

beauty to the atmosphere. Some roan cows were wandering down the lane, feeding on the herbage at the side ; their colour, too, was lit up by the peculiar light, which gave a singular softness to the large shadows of the trees upon the sward. In a meadow by the wood the oaks cast broad shadows on the short velvety sward, not so sharp and definite as those of summer, but tender, and, as it were, drawn with a loving hand. They were large shadows, though it was mid-day—a sign that the sun was no longer at his greatest height, but declining. In July, they would scarcely have extended beyond the rim of the boughs ; the rays would have dropped perpendicularly, now they slanted. Pleasant as it was, there was regret in the thought that the summer was going fast. Another sign—the grass by the gateway, an acre of it, was brightly yellow with hawkweeds, and under these were the last faded brown heads of meadow clover ; the brown, the bright yellow disks, the green grass, the tinted sunlight falling upon it, caused a wavering colour that fleeted before the glance.

All things brown, and yellow, and red, are brought out by the autumn sun ; the brown furrows freshly turned where the stubble was yesterday, the brown bark of trees, the brown fallen leaves, the brown stalks of plants ; the red haws, the red unripe blackberries, red briony berries, reddish-yellow fungi ; yellow hawkweed, yellow ragwort, yellow hazel-leaves, elms, spots in lime or beech ; not a speck of yellow, red, or

brown the yellow sunlight does not find out. And these make autumn, with the caw of rooks, the peculiar autumn caw of laziness and full feeding, the sky blue as March between the great masses of dry cloud floating over the mist in the distant valleys, the tinkle of traces as the plough turns, and the silence of the woodland birds. The lark calls as he rises from the earth, the swallows still wheeling call as they go over, but the woodland birds are mostly still, and the restless sparrows gone forth in a cloud to the stubble. Dry clouds, because they evidently contain no moisture that will fall as rain here ; thick mists, condensed as haze only, floating on before the wind. The oaks were not yet yellow, their leaves were half green, half brown ; Time had begun to invade them, but had not yet indented his full mark.

Of the year there are two most pleasurable seasons ; the spring, when the oak-leaves come russet-brown on the great oaks ; the autumn, when the oak-leaves begin to turn. At the one, I enjoy the summer that is coming ; at the other, the summer that is going. At either, there is a freshness in the atmosphere, a colour everywhere, a depth of blue in the sky, a welcome in the woods. The redwings had not yet come ; the acorns were full, but still green ; the greedy rooks longed to see them riper. They were very numerous, the oaks covered with them, a crop for the greedy rooks, the greedier pigeons, the pheasants, and the jays.

THE SKY WAS CLEAR AND BLUE BETWEEN THE CLOUDS.

2-III. 204]

One thing I missed—the corn. So quickly was the harvest gathered that those who delight in the colour of the wheat had no time to enjoy it. If any painter had been looking forward to August to enable him to paint the corn, he must have been disappointed. There was no time; the sun came, saw, and conquered, and the sheaves were swept from the field. Before yet the reapers had entered one field of ripe wheat, I did indeed for a brief evening obtain a glimpse of the richness and still beauty of an English harvest. The sun was down, and in the west a pearly grey light spread widely, with a little scarlet drawn along its lower border. Heavy shadows hung in the foliage of the elms; the clover had closed, and the quiet moths had taken the place of the humming bees. Southwards, the full moon, a red-yellow disc, shone over the wheat, which appeared the finest pale amber. A quiver of colour—an undulation—seemed to stay in the air, left from the heated day; the sunset hues and those of the red-tinted moon fell as it were into the remnant of day, and filled the wheat; they were poured into it, so that it grew in their colours. Still heavier the shadows deepened in the skies; all was silence, save for the sound of the reapers on the other side of the hedge, slash-rustle, slash-rustle, and the drowsy night came down as softly as an eyelid.

From *The Open Air*, by RICHARD JEFFERIES.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. "At the one, I enjoy the summer that is coming ; at the other, the summer that is going." Make six sentences of your own, using this as a model.

2. Make a list of references to colour in this passage, e.g. : "The brown stalks of plants, the red haws."

3. These sentences contain words and expressions which, though they have their correct uses, are here employed as slang. Substitute for them other and better terms of the same meaning :

(*a*) When next you come to Brighton, you must put up with us.

(*b*) I got up, got my breakfast, got to school, and got punished for being late.

(*c*) There are the remains of the many houses which hang about the palaces.

(*d*) They do you very handsomely in this hotel.

(*e*) It is a nice day.

(*f*) The concert was rotten.

(*g*) I am tremendously busy this evening.

(*h*) This apple has a funny taste.

II. Grammar Exercises

4. Divide the following words into stem and affix (or affixes, if there are more than one), and give another word from the same stem : *sacrifice, export, expose, unquestionably, prisoner, circumstance, solitary, furnish, intend, predict, depressed, created, species, unhappy, liberty, wisest, miserable.*

5. For the words or phrases printed in italics substitute clauses which have the same meaning, stating what kind of clause each is :

(*a*) The harvesters returned home *at sunset.*

(*b*) He was robbed by death of *his dearest* child.

(*c*) *Unknown*, he could scarcely hope to obtain the post for which he was making application.

(*d*) *In youth* Hampden had led a life of pleasure.

(*e*) The River Nile, *lying between two deserts*, possesses scarcely any tributaries.

(*f*) Give heed to *the advice of an old friend.*

6. Join the following pairs of sentences by one of the relative pronouns *who*, *which*, and *that*. When you have finished, make a list of as many differences of use in these pronouns as you can think of.

(*a*) Thin grasses stood in a bunch.
They were perfectly white, bleached by sun and dew.

(*b*) A flock of birds flew over the meadow.
The flock formed a dense cloud.

(*c*) A company of men gathered round the door.
The company numbered about a hundred persons.

(*d*) A company of men gathered round the door.
The men were talking and laughing.

(*e*) The sunlight fell upon the trees and the grass.
Its colour was a tinted yellow.

(*f*) Some harvesters were mowing steadily.
Their forms were shadowy in the gathering gloom.

7. What kind of subordinate clause is each of those italicized in the following? —

(*a*) *If a thousand of them should take the field*, they will meet thee in battle.

(*b*) The guide had reserved *what he considered to be his greatest wonder* till the last.

(*c*) One day my father, *as he sat at table*, looked steadfastly on my brother and myself.

XXXV

THE PROCESSION OF THE SEASONS

So forth issued the seasons of the year.
First, lusty Spring, all dight[1] in leaves of flowers
That freshly budded and new blooms did bear,
In which a thousand birds had built their bowers
That sweetly sang to call forth paramours.[2]
And in his hand a javelin he did bear,
And on his head, as fit for warlike stours,[3]
A gilt-engraven morion[4] he did wear,
That, as some did him love, so others did him fear.

Then came the jolly Summer, being dight
In a thin silken cassock, coloured green,

That was unlinéd all, to be more light ;
And on his head a garland well beseen
He wore, from which, as[5] he had chaféd been,
The sweat did drop ; and in his hand he bore
A bow and shafts, as he in forest green
Had hunted late the leopard or the boar,
And now would bathe his limbs with labour heated sore.

Then came the Autumn, all in yellow clad,
As though he joyéd in his plenteous store,
Laden with fruits that made him laugh, full glad
That he had banished hunger, which tofore[6]
Had by the belly oft him pinchéd sore.
Upon his head a wreath, that was enrolled
With ears of corn of every sort, he bore ;
And in his hand a sickle he did hold
To reap the ripened fruits the which the earth had yold.[7]

Lastly came Winter, clothéd all in freeze,
Chattering his teeth for cold that did him chill ;
Whilst on his hoary beard his breath did freeze
And the dull drops that from his purpled bill[8]
As from a limbeck[9] did adown distil.
In his right hand a tippéd staff he held,
With which his feeble steps he stayéd still ;
For he was faint with cold, and weak with eld,[10]
That scarce his looséd limbs he able was to weld.

From *The Faerie Queene*, by EDMUND SPENSER.

[1] Dressed. [2] Lovers. [3] Encounters. [4] Helmet. [5] As if.
[6] Before. [7] Yielded. [8] Nose. [9] Glass retort. [10] Age.

XXXVI

THE DISCOVERY OF AMERICA

THE armament of Columbus was not suitable, either to the dignity of the nation by which it was equipped, or to the importance of the service for which it was destined. It consisted of three vessels. The largest, a ship of no considerable burden, was commanded by Columbus, as admiral, who gave it the name of *Santa Maria* out of respect for the Blessed Virgin, whom he honoured with singular devotion. Of the second, called the *Pinta*, Martin Pinzon was captain, and his brother Francis pilot. The third, named the *Nigna*, was under the command of Vincent Yanez Pinzon. These two were light vessels, hardly superior in burden or force to large boats. The squadron, if it merits that name, was victualled for twelve months, and had on board ninety men, mostly sailors, together with a few adventurers who followed the fortunes of Columbus, and some gentlemen of Isabella's court, whom she appointed to accompany him. Though the expense of the undertaking was one of the circumstances which chiefly alarmed the court of Spain, and retarded so long the negotiations with Columbus, the sum employed in fitting out the squadron did not exceed four thousand pounds.

As the art of ship-building in the fifteenth century was extremely rude, and the bulk of vessels was ac-

commodated to the short and easy voyages along the coast which they were accustomed to perform, it is a proof of the courage as well as enterprising genius of Columbus that he ventured, with a fleet so unfit for a distant navigation, to explore unknown seas, where he had no chart to guide him, no knowledge of the tides and currents, and no experience of the dangers to which he might be exposed. His eagerness to accomplish the great design which had so long engrossed his thoughts made him overlook or disregard every circumstance that would have intimidated a mind less adventurous. He pushed forward the preparations with such ardour, and was seconded so effectively by the persons to whom Isabella committed the superintendence of the business, that everything was soon in readiness for the voyage. But, as Columbus was deeply impressed with sentiments of religion, he could not set out upon an expedition so arduous, and of which one great object was to extend the knowledge of the Christian faith, without imploring publicly the guidance and protection of heaven. With this view he, together with all the persons under his command, marched in solemn procession to the monastery of Rabida. After confessing their sins, and obtaining absolution, they received the holy sacrament from the hands of the guardian, who joined his prayers to theirs for the success of an enterprise which he had so zealously patronised.

Next morning, being Friday the third day of

August, in the year one thousand four hundred and ninety-two, Columbus set sail, a little before sunrise, in presence of a vast crowd of spectators, who sent up their supplications to heaven for the prosperous issue of the voyage, which they wished rather than expected. Columbus steered directly for the Canary Islands, and arrived there without any occurrence that could have deserved notice on any other occasion. But, in a voyage of such expectation and importance, every circumstance was the object of attention. The rudder of the *Pinta* broke loose the day after she left the harbour ; and that accident alarmed the crew, no less superstitious than unskilful, as a certain omen of the unfortunate destiny of the expedition. Even in the short run to the Canaries, the ships were found to be so crazy and ill-appointed as to be very improper for a navigation which was expected to be both long and dangerous. Columbus refitted them, however, to the best of his power ; and having supplied himself with fresh provisions, he took his departure from Gomera, one of the most westerly of the Canary Islands, on the sixth day of September.

There the voyage of discovery may properly be said to begin ; for Columbus, holding his course due west, left immediately the usual track of navigation, and stretched into unfrequented and unknown seas. The first day, as it was very calm, he made but little way ; but on the second he lost sight of the Canaries ; and many of the sailors, dejected already and dismayed,

when they contemplated the boldness of the undertaking, began to beat their breasts, and to shed tears, as if they were never more to behold land. Columbus comforted them with assurances of success and the prospect of vast wealth in those opulent regions whither he was conducting them. This early discovery of the spirit of his followers taught Columbus that he must prepare to struggle not only with the unavoidable difficulties which might be expected from the nature of his undertaking, but with such as were likely to arise from the ignorance and timidity of the people under his command ; and he perceived that the art of governing the minds of men would be no less requisite for accomplishing the discoveries which he had in view than naval skill and undaunted courage. Happily for himself, and for the country by which he was employed, he joined to the ardent temper and inventive genius of a projector, a thorough knowledge of mankind, an insinuating address, a patient perseverance in executing any plan, the perfect government of his own passions, and the talent of acquiring an ascendency over those of other men. All these qualities, which formed him for command, were accompanied with that superior knowledge of his profession which begets confidence in times of difficulty and danger. To unskilful Spanish sailors, accustomed only to coasting voyages in the Mediterranean, the maritime science of Columbus, the fruit of thirty years' experience, improved by an acquaint-

ance with all the inventions of the Portuguese, appeared immense. As soon as they put to sea, he regulated everything by his sole authority ; he superintended the execution of every order ; and allowing himself only a few hours for sleep, he was at all other times upon deck. As his course lay through seas which had not formerly been visited, the sounding line, or instruments for observation, were continually in his hands. After the example of the Portuguese discoverers, he attended to the motion of tides and currents, watched the flight of birds, the appearance of fishes, of sea-weeds, and of everything that floated on the waves, and entered every occurrence with a minute exactness in the journal which he kept. As the length of the voyage could not fail of alarming sailors habituated only to short excursions, Columbus endeavoured to conceal from them the real progress which they made. With this view, though they ran eighteen leagues on the second day after they left Gomera, he gave out that they had advanced only fifteen, and he uniformly employed the same artifice of reckoning short during the whole voyage. By the fourteenth of September, the fleet was above two hundred leagues to the west of the Canary isles, at a greater distance from land than any Spaniard had been before that time. There they were struck with an appearance no less astonishing than new. They observed that the magnetic needle in their compasses did not point exactly to the polar star, but varied

towards the west ; and as they proceeded, the variation increased. This appearance, which is now familiar, though it still remains one of the mysteries of nature, filled the companions of Columbus with terror. They were now in a boundless and unknown ocean, far from the usual course of navigation ; nature itself seemed to be altered, and the only guide which they had left was about to fail them. Columbus, with no less quickness than ingenuity, invented a reason for the appearance, which, though it did not satisfy himself, seemed so plausible to them that it dispelled their fears, or silenced their murmurs.

He still continued to steer due west, nearly in the same latitude with the Canary Islands. In this course he came within the sphere of the trade wind, which blows invariably from east to west, between the tropics and a few degrees beyond them. He advanced before the steady gale with such uniform rapidity that it was seldom necessary to shift a sail. When about four hundred leagues to the west of the Canaries, he found the sea so covered with weeds that it resembled a meadow of vast extent, and in some places they were so thick as to retard the motion of the vessel. This strange appearance occasioned new alarm and disquiet. The sailors imagined that they were now arrived at the utmost boundary of the navigable ocean ; that these floating weeds would obstruct their farther progress, and concealed dangerous rocks, or some large tract of land, which had sunk,

they knew not how, in that place. Columbus endeavoured to persuade them that what had alarmed ought rather to have encouraged them, and was to be considered as a sign of approaching land. At the same time a brisk gale arose and carried them forward. Several birds were seen hovering about the ship, and directed their flight towards the west. The desponding crew resumed some degree of spirit, and began to entertain fresh hopes.

Upon the first of October they were, according to the admiral's reckoning, seven hundred and seventy leagues to the west of the Canaries ; but, lest his men should be intimidated by the prodigious length of the navigation, he gave out that they had proceeded only five hundred and eighty-four leagues ; and, fortunately for Columbus, neither his own pilot nor those of the other ships had skill sufficient to correct the error and discover the deceit. They had now been above three weeks at sea ; they had proceeded far beyond what other navigators had attempted or deemed possible ; all their prognostics of discovery, drawn from the flight of birds and other circumstances, had proved fallacious ; the appearance of land, with which their own credulity or the artifice of their commander had, from time to time, flattered and amused them, had been altogether illusive, and their prospect of success seemed now to be as distant as ever. These reflections occurred often to men who had no other occupation or object than to reason and discourse

concerning the intention and circumstances of their expedition. They made impression, at first, upon the ignorant and timid, and extending by degrees to such as were better informed or more resolute, the contagion spread at length from ship to ship. From secret whispers or murmurings, they proceeded to open cabals and public complaints. They taxed their sovereign with inconsiderate credulity, in paying such regard to the vain promises and rash conjectures of an indigent foreigner as to hazard the lives of so many of her own subjects in prosecuting a chimerical scheme. They affirmed that they had fully performed their duty, by venturing so far in an unknown and hopeless course, and could incur no blame for refusing to follow any longer a desperate adventurer to certain destruction. They contended that it was necessary to think of returning to Spain, while their crazy vessels were still in a condition to keep the sea, but expressed their fears that the attempt would prove vain, as the wind, which had hitherto been so favourable to their course, must render it impossible to sail in the opposite direction. All agreed that Columbus should be compelled by force to adopt a measure on which their common safety depended. Some of the more audacious proposed, as the most expeditious and certain method of getting rid at once of his remonstrances, to throw him into the sea, being persuaded that, upon their return to Spain, the death of an unsuccessful projector would

excite little concern, and be inquired into with no curiosity.

Columbus was fully sensible of his perilous situation. He had observed with great uneasiness the fatal operation of ignorance and of fear in producing disaffection among his crew, and saw that it was now ready to burst out into open mutiny. He retained, however, perfect presence of mind. He affected to seem ignorant of their machinations. Notwithstanding the agitation and solicitude of his own mind he appeared with a cheerful countenance, like a man satisfied with the progress he had made, and confident of success. Sometimes he employed all the arts of insinuation to soothe his men. Sometimes he endeavoured to work upon their ambition or avarice, by magnificent descriptions of the fame and wealth which they were about to acquire. On other occasions he assumed a tone of authority, and threatened them with vengeance from their sovereign, if by their dastardly behaviour they should defeat this noble effort to promote the glory of God, and to exalt the Spanish name above that of every other nation. Even with seditious sailors, the words of a man whom they had been accustomed to reverence were weighty and persuasive, and not only restrained them from those violent excesses which they meditated, but prevailed with them to accompany their admiral for some time longer.

As they proceeded, the indications of approaching

land seemed to be more certain, and excited hope in proportion. The birds began to appear in flocks making towards the south-west. Columbus, in imitation of the Portuguese navigators, who had been guided in several of their discoveries by the motion of birds, altered his course from due west towards that quarter whither they pointed their flight. But after holding on for several days in the new direction without any better success than formerly, having seen no object, during thirty days, but the sea and the sky, the hopes of his companions subsided faster than they had risen; their fears revived with additional force; impatience, rage, and despair appeared in every countenance. All sense of subordination was lost; the officers, who had hitherto concurred with Columbus in opinion, and supported his authority, now took part with the private men; they assembled tumultuously on deck, expostulated with their commander, mingled threats with their expostulations, and required him instantly to tack about and to return to Europe. Columbus perceived that it would be of no avail to have recourse to any of his former arts, which having been tried so often had lost their effect; and that it was impossible to rekindle any zeal for the success of the expedition among men in whose breasts fear had extinguished every generous sentiment. He saw that it was no less vain to think of employing either gentle or severe measures to quell a mutiny so general and so violent. It was necessary, on all these accounts, to

soothe passions which he could no longer command, and to give way to a torrent too impetuous to be checked. He promised solemnly to his men that he would comply with their request, provided they would accompany him and obey his command for three days longer, and if, during that time, land were not discovered, he would then abandon the enterprise and direct his course towards Spain.

Enraged as the sailors were, and impatient to turn their faces again towards their native country, the proposition did not appear to them unreasonable. nor did Columbus hazard much in confining himself to a time so short. The presages of discovering land were now so numerous and promising that he deemed them infallible. For some days the sounding line reached the bottom, and the soil which it brought up indicated land to be at no great distance. The flocks of birds increased, and were composed not only of sea-fowl, but of such land birds as could not be supposed to fly far from the shore. The crew of the *Pinta* observed a cane floating which seemed to have been newly cut, and likewise a piece of timber artificially carved. The sailors aboard the *Nigna* took up the branch of a tree with red berries perfectly fresh. The clouds around the setting sun assumed a new appearance; the air was mild and warm, and during night the wind became unequal and variable. From all these symptoms, Columbus was so confident of being near land that on the evening of the eleventh of

October, after public prayers for success, he ordered the sails to be furled, and the ships to lie to, keeping strict watch lest they should be driven ashore in the night. During this interval of suspense and expectation, no man shut his eyes; all kept upon deck, gazing intently towards that quarter where they expected to discover the land which had been so long the object of their wishes.

About two hours before midnight, Columbus, standing on the forecastle, observed a light at a distance, and privately pointed it out to Pedro Guttierez, a page of the Queen's wardrobe. Guttierez perceived it, and calling to Salcedo, comptroller of the fleet, all three saw it in motion, as if it were carried from place to place. A little after midnight the joyful sound of LAND! LAND! was heard from the *Pinta*, which kept always ahead of the other ships. But, having been so often deceived by fallacious appearances, every man was now become slow of belief, and waited in all the anguish of uncertainty and impatience for the return of day. As soon as morning dawned, all doubts and fears were dispelled. From every ship an island was seen about two leagues to the north, whose flat and verdant fields, well stored with wood, and watered with many rivulets, presented the aspect of a delightful country. The crew of the *Pinta* instantly began the *Te Deum*, as a hymn of thanksgiving to God, and were joined by those of the other ships, with tears of joy and transports of congratula-

tion. This office of gratitude to heaven was followed by an act of justice to their commander. They threw themselves at the feet of Columbus, with feelings of self-condemnation mingled with reverence. They implored him to pardon their ignorance, incredulity, and insolence, which had created him so much unnecessary disquiet, and had so often obstructed the prosecution of his well-concerted plan ; and passing, in the warmth of the admiration from one extreme to the other, they now pronounced the man whom they had so lately reviled and threatened to be a person inspired by heaven with sagacity and fortitude more than human, in order to accomplish a design so far beyond the ideas and conceptions of all former ages.

As soon as the sun arose, all their boats were manned and armed. They rowed towards the island with their colours displayed, with warlike music and other martial pomp. As they approached the coast, they saw it covered with a multitude of people, whom the novelty of the spectacle had drawn together, whose attitudes and gestures expressed wonder and astonishment at the strange objects which presented themselves to view. Columbus was the first European who set foot in the new world which he had discovered. He landed in a rich dress, and with a naked sword in his hand. His men followed, and kneeling down, they all kissed the ground which they had so long desired to see. They next erected a crucifix, and,

COLUMBUS SETS FOOT IN THE NEW WORLD.

prostrating themselves before it, returned thanks to God for conducting their voyage to such a happy issue. They then took solemn possession of the country for the crown of Castile and Leon, with all the formalities which the Portuguese were accustomed to observe in acts of this kind on their new discoveries.

The Spaniards while thus employed were surrounded by many of the natives, who gazed in silent admiration upon actions which they could not comprehend, and of which they did not foresee the consequences. The dress of the Spaniards, the whiteness of their skins, their beards, their arms, appeared strange and surprising. The vast machines in which they had traversed the ocean, that seemed to move upon the waters with wings, and uttered a dreadful sound resembling thunder, accompanied with lightning and smoke, struck them with such terror that they began to respect their new guests as a superior order of beings, and concluded that they were children of the sun, who had descended to visit the earth.

The Europeans were hardly less amazed at the scene before them. Every hut, every shrub and tree, was different from those which flourished in Europe. The inhabitants appeared in the simple innocence of nature, entirely naked. Their black hair, long and uncurled, floated upon their shoulders, or was bound in tresses around their heads. They had no beards, and every part of their bodies was perfectly smooth. Their complexion was of a dusky copper colour,

their features irregular rather than disagreeable, their aspect gentle and timid. Though not tall, they were well shaped and active. Their faces, and several parts of their bodies, were fantastically painted with glaring colours. They were shy at first through fear, but soon became familiar with the Spaniards, and with transports of joy received from them hawks-bells, glass beads, and other baubles, in return for which they gave such possessions as they had, and some cotton yarn, the only commodity of value that they could produce. Towards evening, Columbus returned to his ship, accompanied by many of the islanders in their boats, which they called "canoes," and though rudely formed out of the trunk of a single tree, they rowed them with surprising dexterity. Thus, in the first interview between the inhabitants of the old and the new worlds, everything was conducted amicably, and to their mutual satisfaction. The former, enlightened and ambitious, formed already vast ideas with respect to the advantages which they might derive from the regions that began to open to their view. The latter, simple and undiscerning, had no foresight of the calamities and desolation which were approaching their country.

From *The History of America*, by WILLIAM ROBERTSON.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. Make sentences showing that you appreciate the differences between the following pairs of words :

cross / *crucifix*	*prodigal* / *prodigious*	*allusion* / *illusion*
threats / *expostulations*	*maritime* / *marital*	*victuals* / *provisions*

2. By altering the order of the words place emphasis upon the words or phrases italicized in the following sentences.

(*a*) The King of men rose *up* with speed.

(*b*) The contrast between the splendour of the noonday sun and the feeble twinkling of the brightest of the stars is *wide.*

(*c*) On the first of July, 1530, the Spaniards *for the last time* sallied forth from the walls of the ancient fortress.

3. Rewrite these sentences without altering the meaning, but omitting the negative words, and making any alterations which become necessary in consequence.

(*a*) Not a speck of yellow, red, or brown the yellow sunlight does not find out.

(*b*) There is no one here who does not love his country.

(*c*) Not without difficulty, we climbed the hill.

(*d*) To build the Pyramids was no small achievement.

(*e*) You cannot enjoy the fruits of victory unless you first endure the heat and dust of the contest.

(*f*) You all did love him once, not without cause.

(*g*) This period is not obscurely hinted at by Confucius in his *Meditations.*

(*h*) There is no one who does not ask himself in his heart what it is that England stands for to him.

(*i*) It is not unfitting that Kali should be the goddess of the dead city.

4. Make a short account of the actual landing of the Spaniards, using the first person, as if it were written by Columbus himself.

II. Grammar Exercises

5. Name the case of each of the nouns and pronouns italicized in :

(*a*) In my *garden I* spend my *days.*

(*b*) I breathe the morning *air* of the world while the *scent* of *Eden's* roses yet lingered in *it.*

(*c*) The play is the *play* of the world.

(*d*) Across brawling *centuries* I hear the bleat of *Abraham's flocks*, and the *tinkling* of Rebekah's camels.

(*e*) *William* the Conqueror's reign lasted twenty-one *years.*

(*f*) The county of *Hampshire* lies between Sussex and Dorset.

(*g*) My *garden* I love more than any place on earth.

(*h*) There are still *forests* in England.

6. Substitute a word or phrase for the subordinate clauses italicized in each of these sentences :

(1) Work *as hard as you can* if you wish to succeed.

(2) *Unless you work hard* you cannot succeed.

(3) Mr. Joskins had a manner *that was very unpleasing.*

(4) I heard *some bells chime.*

(5) Books are the true Elysian fields, where the spirits of *those who have died* converse.

(6) *Although they defended it bravely*, we gained possession of the town.

7. Give three words which contain the same suffix as *hillock* ; three which have the same suffix as *cutlet* ; three which have the same suffix as *balloon.* What is the force of the suffixes *-ock*, *-let*, and *-oon* ?

XXXVII

THERE WAS AN INDIAN

THERE was an Indian, who had known no change,
Who strayed content along a sunlit beach
Gathering shells. He heard a sudden strange
Commingled noise: looked up: and gasped for speech.
For in the bay, where nothing was before,
Moved on the sea, by magic, huge canoes,
With bellying cloths on poles, and not one oar,
And fluttering coloured signs and clambering crews.

And he, in fear, this naked man alone,
His fallen hands forgetting all their shells,
His lips gone pale, knelt low behind a stone,
And stared, and saw, and did not understand,
Columbus's doom-burdened caravels
Slant to the shore, and all their seamen land.

SIR JAMES SQUIRE.

XXXVIII

DIFFERENCE OF RACES

It was not long before we found ourselves at Edinburgh, or rather in the Castle, into which the regiment marched with drums beating, colours flying, and a long train of baggage-waggons behind. The Castle was, as I suppose it is now, a garrison for soldiers. Two other regiments were already there ; the one an Irish, if I remember right, the other a small Highland corps. . . .

My brother, who, for some years past, had been receiving his education in a certain celebrated school in England, was now with us ; and it came to pass that one day my father, as he sat at table, looked steadfastly on my brother and myself, and then addressed my mother.—" During my journey down hither I have lost no opportunity of making enquiries about these people, the Scotch, amongst whom we now are, and since I have been here I have observed them attentively. From what I have heard and seen, I should say that upon the whole they are a very decent set of people. They seem acute and intelligent, and I am told that their system of education is so excellent that every person is learned—more or less acquainted with Greek and Latin. There is one thing, however, connected with them, which is a great drawback—the horrid jargon which they speak.

However learned they may be in Greek and Latin, their English is execrable; and yet I'm told it is not so bad as it was. I was in company the other day with an Englishman who has resided here many years. We were talking about the country and the people. 'I should like both very well,' said I, 'were it not for the language. I wish sincerely our Parliament, which is passing so many foolish Acts every year, would pass one to force these Scotch to speak English.' 'I wish so too,' said he. 'The language is a disgrace to the British Government; but, if you had heard it twenty years ago, captain!—if you had heard it as it was spoken when I first came to Edinburgh!'"

"Only custom," said my mother. "I daresay the language is now what it was then."

"I don't know," said my father, "though I daresay you are right; it could never have been worse than it is at present. But now to the point. Were it not for the language, which, if the boys were to pick it up, might ruin their prospects in life—were it not for that, I should very much like to send them to a school there is in this place, which everybody talks about—the High School, I think they call it. 'Tis said to be the best school in the whole island; but the idea of one's children speaking Scotch—broad Scotch! I must think the matter over."

And he did think the matter over; and the result of this deliberation was a determination to send us to the school. Let me call thee up before my mind's

eye, High School, to which, every morning, the two English brothers took their way from the proud old Castle through the lofty streets of the Old Town. High School!—called so, I scarcely know why; neither lofty in thyself nor by position, being situated in a flat bottom: oblong structure of tawny stone, with many windows fenced with iron netting; with thy long hall below, and thy five chambers above, for the reception of the five classes into which the eight hundred urchins who styled thee instructress were divided. Thy learned rector and his four subordinate dominies; thy strange old porter of the tall form and grizzled hair, hight Boee, and doubtless of Norse ancestry, as his name declares. . . . Yes, I remember all about thee, and how at eight of every morn we were all gathered together with one accord in the long hall, from which, after the litanies had been read (for so I will call them, being an Episcopalian) the five classes from the five sets of benches trotted off in long files, one boy after the other, up the five spiral staircases of stone, each class to its destination; and well do I remember how we of the third sat hushed and still, watched by the eye of the dux, until the door opened, and in walked that model of a good Scotchman, the shrewd, intelligent, but warm-hearted and kind dominie, the respectable Carson.

And in this school I began to construe the Latin language, which I had never done before, notwithstanding my long and diligent study of Lilly, which

illustrious grammar was not used at Edinburgh, nor indeed known. Greek was only taught in the fifth or highest class, in which my brother was ; as for myself, I never got beyond the third during the two years that I remained at this seminary. I certainly acquired here a considerable insight in the Latin tongue ; and, to the scandal of my father and horror of my mother, a thorough proficiency in the Scotch, which, in less than two months, usurped the place of the English, and so obstinately maintained its ground that I still can occasionally detect its lingering remains. I did not spend my time unpleasantly at this school, though, first of all, I had to pass through an ordeal. " Scotland is a better country than England," said an ugly, blear-eyed lad, about a head and shoulders taller than myself, the leader of a gang of varlets who surrounded me in the playground on the first day, as soon as the morning lesson was over. " Scotland is a far better country than England in every respect."

" Is it ? " said I. " Then you ought to be very thankful for not having been born in England."

" That's just what I am, ye loon ; and every morning when I say my prayers, I thank God for not being an Englishman. The Scotch are a much better and braver people than the English."

" It may be so," said I, " for what I know. Indeed, till I came here, I never heard a word about either the Scotch or their country."

" Are ye making fun of us, ye English puppy ? "

said the blear-eyed lad. "Take that!" and I was presently beaten black and blue. And thus did I first become aware of the difference of races and their antipathy to each other.

"Bow to the storm and it shall pass over you." I held my peace, and silently submitted to the superiority of the Scotch—*in numbers*. This was enough; from an object of persecution I soon became one of patronage, especially amongst the champions of the class. "The English," said the blear-eyed lad, "though a wee bit behind the Scotch in strength and fortitude, are nae to be sneezed at, being far ahead of the Irish, to say nothing of the French, a pack of cowardly scoundrels. And with regard to the English country, it isna Scotland, it is true, but it has its gude properties; and, though there is ne'er a haggis in a' the land, there's an unco deal o' gowd and siller. I respect England, for I have an auntie married there."

The Scotch are certainly a most pugnacious people; their whole history proves it. Witness their incessant wars with the English in the olden time, and their internal feuds, highland and lowland, clan with clan, family with family, Saxon with Gael. In my time, the schoolboys, for want, perhaps, of English urchins to contend with, were continually fighting with each other; every noon there was at least one pugilistic encounter, and sometimes three. In one month I witnessed more of these encounters than I had ever previously seen under similar circumstances in Eng-

land. After all, there was not much harm done. Harm ! what harm could result from short chopping blows, a hug, and a tumble ? I was witness to many a sounding whack, some bloodshed, " a blue e'e " now and then, but nothing more. In England, on the contrary, where the lads were comparatively mild, gentle, and pacific, I had been present at more than one death caused by blows in boyish combats, in which the oldest of the victims had scarcely reached thirteen years ; but these blows were in the jugular, given with the full force of the arm shot out horizontally from the shoulder.

But the Scotch, though by no means proficient in boxing (and how should they box, seeing that they have never had a teacher ?) are, I repeat, a most pugnacious people ; at least, they were in my time. Anything served them, that is, the urchins, as a pretence for a fray, or, Dorically speaking, a *bicker* ; every street and close was at feud with its neighbour ; the lads of the school were at feud with the young men of the college, whom they pelted in winter with snow, and in summer with stones ; and then the feud between the Old and the New Town !

One day I was standing on the ramparts of the Castle on the south-western side which overhangs the green brae, where it slopes down into what was in those days the green swamp or morass, called by the natives of Auld Reekie the Nor' Loch. It was a dark gloomy day, and a thin veil of mist was beginning to

settle down upon the brae and the morass. I could perceive, however, that there was a skirmish taking place in the latter spot. I had an indistinct view of two parties, apparently of urchins, and I heard whoops and shrill cries. Eager to know the cause of the disturbance, I left the Castle, and descending the brae, reached the borders of the morass, where was a runnel of water and the remains of an old wall, on the other side of which a narrow path led across the swamp. Upon this path, at a little distance before me, there was a bicker. I pushed forward, but had scarcely crossed the ruined wall and runnel, when the party nearest to me gave way, and in great confusion came running in my direction. As they drew nigh, one of them shouted to me, "Wha are ye, mon? Are ye o' the Auld Toon?" I made no answer. "Ha! ye are o' the New Toon. De'il tak ye, we'll moorder ye"; and the next moment a huge stone sang past my head. "Let me be, ye fule bodies," said I: "I'm no of either of ye; I live yonder aboon in the Castle." "Ah! ye live in the Castle; then ye are an Auld Tooner. Come, gie us your help, man, and dinna stand there staring like a dunnot; we want help sair enough. Here are stanes."

For my own part I wished for nothing better, and, rushing forward, I placed myself at the head of my new associates, and commenced flinging stones fast and desperately. The other party now gave way in their turn, closely followed by ourselves. I was in

the van, and about to stretch out my hand to seize the hindermost boy of the enemy, when, not being acquainted with the miry and difficult paths of the Nor' Loch, and in my eagerness taking no heed of my footing, I plunged into a quagmire, into which I sank as far as my shoulders. Our adversaries no sooner perceived the disaster than, setting up a shout, they wheeled round and attacked us most vehemently. Had my comrades now deserted me, my life had not been worth a straw's purchase ; I should either have been smothered in the quag, or—what is more probable —had my brains beaten out with stones. But they behaved like true Scots, and fought stoutly around their comrade, until I was extricated ; whereupon both parties retired, the night being near at hand.

"Ye arena a bad hand at flinging stanes," said the lad who first addressed me, as we now returned up the brae. "Your aim is right dangerous, mon. I saw how ye skelpit them ; ye maun help us agin thae New Toon blackguards at our next bicker."

So to the next bicker I went, and to many more which speedily followed as the summer advanced. The party to which I had given my help on the first occasion consisted merely of outlyers, posted about halfway up the hill for the purpose of overlooking the movements of the enemy.

Did the latter draw nigh in any considerable force, messengers were forthwith despatched to the Auld Toon, especially to the filthy alleys and closes of the

High Street, which forthwith would disgorge swarms of bare-headed and bare-footed callants, who, with gestures wild and eldrich screech and hollo, might frequently be seen pouring down the sides of the hill. I have seen upwards of a thousand engaged on either side in these frays, which I have no doubt were full as desperate as the fights described in the Iliad, and which were certainly much more bloody than the combats of modern Greece in the war of independence. The callants not only employed their hands in hurling stones, but not infrequently slings, at the use of which they were very expert, and which occasionally dislodged teeth, shattered jaws, or knocked out an eye. Our opponents certainly laboured under considerable disadvantage, being compelled not only to wade across a deceitful bog, but likewise to clamber up part of a steep hill before they could attack; nevertheless, their determination was such, and such their impetuosity, that we had sometimes difficulty enough to maintain our own.

I shall never forget one bicker, the last, indeed, which occurred at that time, as the authorities of the town, alarmed by the desperation of its character, stationed forthwith a body of police on the hillside, to prevent in future any such breaches of the peace. It was a beautiful Sunday evening; the rays of the descending sun were reflected redly from the grey walls of the Castle, and from the black rocks on which it was founded. The bicker had long since com-

menced ; stones from sling and hand were flying ; but the callants of the New Town were now carrying everything before them. A full-grown baker's apprentice was at their head. He was foaming with rage, and had taken the field, so I was told, in order to avenge his brother, whose eye had been knocked out in one of the late bickers. He was no slinger or flinger, but brandished in his right hand the spoke of a cartwheel, like my countryman Tom Hickathrift of old, in his encounter with the giant of the Lincolnshire fen. Protected by a piece of wicker-work attached to his left arm, he rushed on to the fray, disregarding the stones which were showered against him, and was ably seconded by his followers. Our own party was chased halfway up the hill, where I was struck to the ground by the baker, after having been foiled in an attempt which I had made to fling a handful of earth into his eyes. All now appeared lost ; the Auld Toon was in full retreat ; I myself lay at the baker's feet, who had just raised his spoke, probably to give me the *coup de grâce*—it was an awful moment.

Just then I heard a shout and a rushing sound ; a wild-looking figure is descending the hill with terrible bounds ; it is a lad of some fifteen years ; he is bareheaded, and his red, uncombed hair stands on end like hedgehogs' bristles ; his frame is lithy, like that of an antelope, but he has prodigious breadth of chest ; he wears a military undress, that of the regiment,

even of the drummer, for it is wild Davy, whom a month before I had seen enlisted on Leith Links, to serve King George with drum and drumstick as long as his services might be required, and who, ere a week had elapsed, had smitten with his fist Drum-Major Elzigood, who, incensed at his inaptitude, had threatened him with his cane. He has been in confinement for weeks. This is the first day of his liberation, and he is now descending the hill with horrid bounds and shoutings. He is now about five yards distant, and the baker, who apprehends that something dangerous is at hand, prepares himself for the encounter. But what avails the strength of a baker, even full grown? What avails the wheel-spoke, should there be an opportunity of using it, against the impetus of an avalanche or a cannon-ball? For to either of these might that wild figure be compared, which, at the distance of five yards, sprang at once with head, hands, feet, and body, all together, upon the champion of the New Town, tumbling him to the earth amain. And now it was the turn of the Old Town to triumph. Our late discomfited host, returning on its steps, overwhelmed the fallen champion with blows of every kind, and then, led on by his vanquisher, who had assumed his arms, namely, the wheel-spoke and wicker-shield, fairly cleared the brae of their adversaries, whom they drove down headlong into the morass.

From *Lavengro*, by GEORGE BORROW.

EXERCISES

1. "A certain celebrated school in England." Find the names of some of the most important schools in England and say where they are situated.

I. Composition Exercises

2. What is the meaning of: *broad Scotch*; *Episcopalian*; *subordinate dominies*; *dux*; *seminary*; *ordeal*; *varlet*; *loon*; *haggis*; *pugilistic*; *jugular*; *morass*; *runnel*; *the Iliad*; *impetuosity*; *coup de grâce*; *prodigious*; *discomfited*?

3. Use in sentences: with colours flying; commanding a noble prospect; a broad arm of the sea; to make inquiries; upon the whole; a great drawback; my mind's eye; with one accord; to construe; a gang of varlets; in every respect; black and blue; to say nothing of; internal feuds; under similar circumstances.

4. Name words similar in meaning to the following: *regiment*, *celebrated*, *steadfastly*, *opportunity*, *execrable*, *to reside*, *ruin*, *structure*, *relics*, *spiral*, *shrewd*, *scandal*, *antipathy*, *scoundrel*.

5. Substitute synonyms for the italicized words in the following:

(*a*) All little birds that *are*
Were singing in the trees.

(*b*) She is *getting* quite a big girl now.

(*c*) This dress *becomes* you very well.

(*d*) The sky is *becoming* dark.

(*e*) They *will be* home before us.

(*f*) Will you *have* some fruit?

(*g*) Will you *have* some tea?

(*h*) You *have* a cold.

(*i*) The cat *got* on the top of the wall.

II. Grammar Exercises

6. Divide these sentences into principal and subordinate clauses. Then rewrite them, using *if* in each case to introduce the subordinate clause.

(*a*) I should like Scotland very well, were it not for the language.

(*b*) Had my comrades now deserted me, my life had not been worth a straw.

(*c*) Had you not found me, I must soon have perished.

(*d*) Allow of the principle, and Britain resembles Africa in every respect.

(*e*) Were we suddenly to be transplanted back a century ago, we should still see Sirius in its well-known place to the left of Orion.

(*f*) Could you stand upon the moon, you would find your weight greatly reduced.

7. Give examples of simple sentences combined in the following ways :

(*a*) By using a conjunction.

(*b*) By using a participle.

(*c*) By using phrases in apposition.

(*d*) By using a relative pronoun.

(*e*) By using the infinitive in place of the finite verb.

(*f*) By using what is called the absolute construction—e.g. : The night having come, every sentry was on duty.

XXXIX

MR. WELLER THE ELDER DELIVERS SOME CRITICAL SENTIMENTS RESPECTING LITERARY COMPOSITION

MR. WELLER, having plenty of time at his disposal, sauntered down as far as the Mansion House, where he paused and contemplated, with a face of great calmness and philosophy, the numerous cads and drivers of short stages who assemble near that famous place of resort, to the great terror and confusion of the old-lady population of these realms. Having loitered here for half an hour or so, Mr. Weller turned, and began wending his way towards Leadenhall market, through a variety of by-streets and courts. As he was sauntering away his spare time, and stopped to look at almost every object that met his gaze, it is by no means surprising that Mr. Weller should have paused before a small stationer's and print-seller's window; but without further explanation it does appear surprising that his eyes should have no sooner rested on certain pictures which were exposed for sale therein than he gave a sudden start, smote his right leg with great vehemence, and exclaimed with energy, "If it hadn't been for this, I should ha' forgot all about it till it was too late!"

The particular picture on which Sam Weller's eyes were fixed, as he said this, was a highly coloured

representation of a couple of human hearts skewered together with an arrow, cooking before a cheerful fire, while a male and female cannibal in modern attire (the gentleman being clad in a blue coat and white trousers, and the lady in a deep red pelisse with a parasol of the same) were approaching the meal with hungry eyes, up a serpentine gravel path leading thereunto. A decidedly indelicate young gentleman, in a pair of wings and nothing else, was depicted as superintending the cooking: a representation of the spire of the church in Langham Place, London, appeared in the distance; and the whole formed a *Valentine*, of which, as a written inscription in the window testified, there was a large assortment within, which the shopkeeper pledged himself to dispose of, to his countrymen generally, at the reduced rate of one and sixpence each.

"I should ha' forgot it; I should certainly ha' forgot it!" said Sam; so saying, he at once stepped into the stationer's shop, and requested to be served with a sheet of the best gilt-edged letter-paper, and a hard-nibbed pen which could be warranted not to splutter. These articles having been promptly supplied, he walked on direct towards Leadenhall market at a good round pace, very different from his recent lingering one. Looking round him, he there beheld a signboard on which the painter's art had delineated something remotely resembling a cerulean elephant with an aquiline nose in lieu of trunk.

Rightly conjecturing that this was the Blue Boar himself, he stepped into the house, and inquired concerning his parent.

"He won't be here this three quarters of an hour or more," said the young lady who superintended the domestic arrangements of the Blue Boar.

"Wery good, my dear," replied Sam. "Let me have nine-penn'orth o' brandy and water luke, and the inkstand, will you, miss?"

The brandy and water luke, and the inkstand, having been carried into the little parlour, and the young lady having carefully flattened down the coals to prevent their blazing, and carried away the poker to preclude the possibility of the fire being stirred, without the full privity and concurrence of the Blue Boar being first had and obtained, Sam Weller sat himself down in a box near the stove, and pulled out the sheet of gilt-edged letter-paper and the hard-nibbed pen. Then looking carefully at the pen to see that there were no hairs in it, and dusting down the table, so that there might be no crumbs of bread under the paper, Sam tucked up the cuffs of his coat, squared his elbows, and composed himself to write.

To ladies and gentlemen who are not in the habit of devoting themselves practically to the science of penmanship, writing a letter is no very easy task, it being always considered necessary in such cases for the writer to recline his head on his left arm, so as to place his eyes as nearly as possible on a level with the paper,

and, while glancing sideways at the letters he is constructing, to form with his tongue imaginary characters to correspond. These motions, although unquestionably of the greatest assistance to original composition, retard in some degree the progress of the writer, and Sam had unconsciously been a full hour and a half writing words in small text, smearing out wrong letters with his little finger, and putting in new ones which required going over very often to render them visible through the old blots, when he was roused by the opening of the door and the entrance of his parent.

" Vell, Sammy," said the father.

" Vell, my Prooshan Blue," responded the son, laying down his pen. " What's the last bulletin about mother-in-law ? "[1]

" Mrs. Veller passed a very good night, but is uncommon perwerse and unpleasant this mornin'. Signed upon oath, S. Veller, Esquire, Senior. That's the last vun as was issued, Sammy," replied Mr. Weller, untying his shawl.

" No better yet ? " inquired Sam.

" All the symptoms aggerawated," replied Mr. Weller, shaking his head. " But wot's that you're a-doin' of ? Pursuit of knowledge under difficulties, Sammy ? "

" I've done now," said Sam with slight embarrassment. " I've been a-writin'."

[1] *i.e.* stepmother.

" SAMIVEL, SAMIVEL," SAID MR. WELLER.

" So I see," replied Mr. Weller. " Not to any young 'ooman, I hope, Sammy ? "

" Why, it's no use a-sayin' it ain't," replied Sam. " It's a walentine."

" A what ? " exclaimed Mr. Weller, apparently horror-stricken by the word.

" A walentine," replied Sam.

" Samivel, Samivel," said Mr. Weller, in reproachful accents, " I didn't think you'd ha' done it. Arter the warnin' you've had o' your father's wicious propensities ; arter all I've said to you upon this here wery subject ; arter actiwally seein' and bein' in the company o' your own mother-in-law, vich I should ha'

thought wos a moral lesson as no man could never ha' forgotten to his dyin' day ! I didn't think you'd ha' done it, Sammy, I didn't think you'd ha' done it ! " These reflections were too much for the good old man. He raised Sam's tumbler to his lips and drank off its contents.

" Wot's the matter now ? " said Sam.

" Nev'r mind, Sammy," replied Mr. Weller ; " it'll be a wery agonizin' trial to me at my time of life, but I'm pretty tough, that's vun consolation, as the wery old turkey remarked wen the farmer said he wos afeerd he should be obliged to kill him for the London market."

" Wot'll be a trial ? " inquired Sam.

" To see you married, Sammy—to see you a dilluded wictim, and thinkin' in your innocence that it's all wery capital," replied Mr. Weller. " It's a dreadful trial to a father's feelin's, that 'ere, Sammy."

" Nonsense," said Sam. " I ain't a-goin' to get married ; don't you fret yourself about that. I know you're a judge of these things : order in your pipe, and I'll read you the letter. There ! "

We cannot distinctly say whether it was the prospect of the pipe, or the consolatory reflection that a fatal disposition to get married ran in the family and couldn't be helped, which calmed Mr. Weller's feelings and caused his grief to subside. We should be rather disposed to say that the result was attained by combining the two sources of consolation, for he

repeated the second in a low tone very frequently; ringing the bell meantime, to order in the first. He then divested himself of his upper coat; and lighting the pipe and placing himself in front of the fire with his back towards it, so that he could feel its full heat and recline against the mantelpiece at the same time, turned towards Sam, and with a countenance greatly mollified by the softening influence of tobacco, requested him to fire away.

Sam dipped his pen into the ink to be ready for any corrections, and began with a very theatrical air:

"'Lovely——'"

"Stop," said Mr. Weller, ringing the bell. "A double glass o' the inwariable, my dear."

"Very well, sir," replied the girl, who with great quickness appeared, vanished, returned, and disappeared.

"They seem to know your ways here," observed Sam.

"Yes," replied his father, "I've been here before, in my time. Go on, Sammy."

"'Lovely creetur,'" repeated Sam.

"'Tain't in poetry, is it?" interposed his father.

"No, no," replied Sam.

"Werry glad to hear it," said Mr. Weller. "Poetry's unnat'ral; no man ever talked poetry 'cept a beadle on Boxin' Day, or Warren's Blackin', or Rowland's Oil, or some o' them low fellows; never you let yourself down to talk poetry, my boy. Begin agin, Sammy."

Mr. Weller resumed his pipe with critical solemnity, and Sam once more commenced, and read as follows.

" 'Lovely creetur i feel myself a dammed '——"

"That ain't proper," said Mr. Weller, taking his pipe from his mouth.

"No: it ain't 'dammed,'" observed Sam, holding the letter up to the light; it's 'shamed.' There's a blot there—" I feel myself ashamed.'"

"Werry good," said Mr. Weller. "Go on."

" 'Feel myself ashamed and completely cir——' I forget what this here word is," said Sam, scratching his head with the pen, in vain attempts to remember.

"Why don't you look at it, then?" inquired Mr. Weller.

"So I *am* a-lookin' at it," replied Sam, "but there's another blot. There's a *c* and a *i* and a *d*."

"Circumwented, p'raps," suggested Mr. Weller.

"No, it ain't that," said Sam, "'circumscribed'; that's it."

"That ain't as good a word as 'circumwented,' Sammy," said Mr. Weller, gravely.

"Think not?" said Sam.

"Nothin' like it," replied his father.

"But don't you think it means more?" inquired Sam.

"Vell, p'raps it is a more tenderer word," said Mr. Weller, after a few moments' reflection. "Go on, Sammy."

" 'Feel myself ashamed and completely circum-

scribed in a-dressin' of you, for you *are* a nice gal and nothin' but it.' "

"That's a werry pretty sentiment," said the elder Mr. Weller, removing his pipe to make way for the remark.

"Yes, I think it is rayther good," observed Sam, highly flattered.

"Wot I like in that 'ere style of writin'," said the elder Mr. Weller, "is that there ain't no callin' names in it,—no Wenuses, nor nothin' o' that kind. Wot's the good o' callin' a young 'ooman a Wenus or a angel, Sammy?"

"Ah! what, indeed?" replied Sam.

"You might jist as well call her a griffin, or a unicorn, or a king's arms at once, which is werry well known to be a col-lection o' fabulous animals," added Mr. Weller.

"Just as well," replied Sam.

"Drive on, Sammy," said Mr. Weller.

Sam complied with the request, and proceeded as follows; his father continuing to smoke, with a mixed expression of wisdom and complacency, which was particularly edifying.

" 'Afore I see you, I thought all women was alike!' "

"So they are," observed the elder Mr. Weller, parenthetically.

" 'But now,' " continued Sam, " 'now I find what a reg'lar soft-headed, inkred'lous turnip I must ha'

been; for there ain't nobody like you, though *I* like you better than nothin' at all.' I thought it best to make that rayther strong," said Sam, looking up.

Mr. Weller nodded approvingly, and Sam resumed.

"'So I take the privilidge of the day, Mary, my dear—as the gen'lm'n in difficulties did, ven he valked out of a Sunday—to tell you that the first and only time I see you, your likeness was took on my hart in much quicker time and brighter colours than ever a likeness was took by the profeel macheen (wich p'raps you may have heerd on, Mary my dear) altho' it *does* finish a portrait and put the frame and glass on complete, with a hook at the end to hang it up by, and all in two minutes and a quarter.'"

"I am afeerd that werges on the poetical, Sammy," said Mr. Weller, dubiously.

"No, it don't," replied Sam, reading very quickly to avoid contesting the point.

"'Except of me Mary my dear as your walentine and think over what I've said. My dear Mary, I will now conclude.' That's all," said Sam.

"That's rather a sudden pull up, ain't it, Sammy?" inquired Mr. Weller.

"Not a bit on it," said Sam; "she'll vish there wos more, and that's the great art o' letter-writin'."

"Well," said Mr. Weller, "there's somethin' in that; and I wish your mother-in-law 'ud only conduct

her conwersation on the same gen-teel principle. Ain't you a-goin' to sign it?"

"That's the difficulty," said Sam; "I don't know what *to* sign it."

"Sign it 'Veller,'" said the oldest surviving proprietor of that name.

"Won't do," said Sam. "Never sign a walentine with your own name."

"Sign it 'Pickwick,' then," said Mr. Weller; "it's a werry good name, and a easy one to spell."

"The very thing," said Sam. "I *could* end with a werse; what do you think?"

"I don't like it, Sam," rejoined Mr. Weller. "I never knowed a respectable coachman as wrote poetry, 'cept one, as made an affectin' copy o' werses the night afore he wos hung for a highway robbery; and *he* wos only a Cambervell man, so even that's no rule."

But Sam was not to be dissuaded from the poetical idea that had occurred to him, so he signed the letter,

"Your lovesick
PICKWICK."

And, having folded it in a very intricate manner, squeezed a down-hill direction in one corner: "To Mary, Housemaid at Mr. Nupkins's, Mayor's, Ipswich, Suffolk," and put it into his pocket, wafered and ready for the General Post.

From *The Pickwick Papers*, by CHARLES DICKENS.

EXERCISES

1. Name three amusing characters to be found in English literature, and write a few lines about each.

2. Give the correct form of : " Prooshan Blue " ; " all the symptoms aggerawated " ; " wicious propensities " ; " a dilluded wictim " ; " wot's the good o' callin' a young 'ooman a Wenus ? " ; " an affectin' copy o' werses."

I. Composition Exercises

3. Use in sentences : with great vehemence ; delineated ; cerulean ; an aquiline nose ; concurrence ; with slight embarrassment ; a source of consolation ; greatly mollified ; with critical solemnity ; parenthetically ; dubiously ; a highway robbery.

4. Express as simply as you can the words italicized in :

(*a*) Looking round him, he there *beheld* a signboard on which *the painter's art had delineated something remotely resembling a cerulean elephant with an aquiline nose in lieu of trunk. Rightly conjecturing* that this was the Blue Boar himself, he stepped into the house, and *inquired concerning his parent.*

(*b*) The young lady carried away the poker *to preclude the possibility of the fire being stirred, without the full privity and concurrence of the Blue Boar being first had and obtained.*

5. Express in the simplest language the meaning of the following proverbial metaphors :

(*a*) A rolling stone gathers no moss.

(*b*) All that glitters is not gold.

(*c*) I have other fish to fry.

(*d*) The game is not worth the candle.

(*e*) A new broom sweeps clean.

(*f*) You may take a horse to the fountain, but you cannot make him drink.

(*g*) Every cloud has a silver lining.

(*h*) To keep one's armour bright.

(*i*) A hen-pecked husband.

(*j*) A chip of the old block.

(*k*) A rainy day.

(*l*) To throw up the sponge.

6. (*a*) Find words which have nearly the same meaning as *ensure, maxim, enmity, animate.*

(*b*) Find words opposite in meaning to *attraction, scarcity, callous.*

II. Grammar Exercises

7. Define the following words :

Example—*Water-bottle :* " A water-bottle is a bottle for holding water."

Blackboard, tramline, paper-bag, newspaper, pocket-knife, pick-pocket, rainproof, clothes-horse, time-table, tradesman, airman, dustman, snow-man, tree-stem, boot-tree, tree-frog, greenhouse, greengrocer, blue-green, fish-paste, fish-hook, by-path, spoil-sport.

8. Fill in the blanks in the following sentences with the proper reflexive pronouns :

(*a*) After the battle of Philippi Brutus killed ——.

(*b*) Neither you nor I can help ——.

(*e*) Every man must help ——.

(*d*) Of ——, no man can do anything.

(*e*) In the trackless wood we nearly lost ——.

(*f*) One must not be too sure of ——.

XL

GOSSAMER

On September the 21st, 1741, being then on a visit, and intent on field-diversions, I rose before daybreak. When I came into the enclosures, I found the stubbles and clover-grounds matted all over with a thick coat of cobweb, in the meshes of which a copious and heavy dew hung so plentifully that the whole face of the country seemed, as it were, covered with two or three setting-nets, drawn one over another. When the dogs attempted to hunt, their eyes were so blinded and hoodwinked that they could not proceed, but were obliged to lie down and scrape the incumbrances from their faces with their fore-feet, so that, finding my sport interrupted, I returned home musing in my mind on the oddness of the occurrence.

As the morning advanced, the sun became bright and warm, and the day turned out one of those most lovely ones which no season but the autumn produces, cloudless, calm, serene, and worthy of the south of France itself.

About nine an appearance very unusual began to demand our attention, a shower of cobwebs falling from very elevated regions, and continuing, without any interruption, till the close of the day. These webs were not single filmy threads, floating in the

air in all directions, but perfect flakes or rags, some near an inch broad and five or six long, which fell with a degree of velocity which showed they were considerably heavier than the atmosphere.

On every side, as the observer turned his eyes, might he behold a continual succession of fresh flakes falling into his sight, and twinkling like stars as they turned their sides towards the sun.

How far this wonderful shower extended would be difficult to say, but we know that it reached Bradley, Selborne, and Alresford, three places which lie in a sort of a triangle, the shortest of whose sides is about eight miles in extent.

At the second of these places there was a gentleman (for whose veracity and intelligent turn we have the greatest veneration) who observed it the moment he got abroad, but concluded that, as soon as he came upon the hill above his house, where he took his morning rides, he should be higher than this meteor, which he imagined might have been blown, like thistledown, from the common above. But, to his great astonishment, when he rode to the most elevated part of the down, 300 feet above his fields, he found the webs in appearance still as much above him as before, still descending into sight in a constant succession, and twinkling in the sun so as to draw the attention of the most incurious.

Neither before nor after was any such fall observed. But on this day the flakes hung in the trees and hedges

so thick that a diligent person sent out might have gathered baskets full.

The remark that I shall make on these cobweb-like appearances, called gossamer, is that, strange and superstitious as the notions about them were formerly, nobody in these days doubts but that they are the real production of small spiders, which swarm in the fields in fine weather in autumn, and have a power of shooting out webs from their tails so as to render themselves buoyant, and lighter than air. But why these apterous insects should that day take such a wonderful aerial excursion, and why their webs should at once become so gross and material as to be considerably more weighty than air, and to descend with precipitation, is a matter beyond my skill. If I might be allowed to hazard a supposition, I should imagine that these filmy threads, when first shot up, might be entangled in the rising dew, and so drawn up, spiders and all, by a brisk evaporation, into the region where clouds are formed; and if the spiders have a power of coiling and thickening their webs in the air, then, when they become heavier than air, they must fall.

Every day in fine weather, in autumn chiefly, do I see these spiders shooting out their webs and mounting aloft; they will go off from your finger if you will take them into your hand. Last summer one alighted on my book as I was reading in the parlour, and, running to the top of the page and shooting out

a web, took its departure from thence. But what I most wondered at was that it went off with considerable velocity in a place where no air was stirring, and I am sure that I did not assist it with my breath. So that these little crawlers seem to have, while mounting, some locomotive power without the use of wings, and to move in the air faster than the air itself.

From *The Natural History of Selborne*, by GILBERT WHITE.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. Use in sentences : Deeply impressed with the sentiments of religion ; unavoidable difficulties ; an insinuating address ; an indigent foreigner ; a chimerical scheme ; all the arts of insinuation ; in imitation of the Portuguese navigators ; deceived by fallacious appearances.

2. Find the meanings of the following words : *Absolution, superstitious, destiny, opulent, requisite, projector, artifice, ingenuity, plausible, intimidated, prodigious, prognostics, credulity, illusive, audacious, machinations, expostulations, infallible.*

3. Change from the interrogative form to the affirmative : "It may, indeed, be objected to Hebrew poetry, that it has no regular rhythm, except a rude parallelism. What then ? Must it be, therefore, altogether destitute of music ? Has not the rain a rhythm of its own, as it patters on the pane, or sinks on the bosom of its kindred pool ? Hath not the wind a harmony, as it bows the groaning woods, or howls over the mansions of the dead ? Have not the waves of ocean their wild bass ?"

4. In the following expressions join the words which are most closely connected by placing a hyphen between them : a dark green velvet jacket ; a waste paper basket ; a bright coloured picture ; a beautiful summer day ; their hearts were lifted up with pride.

II. Grammar Exercises

5. What part of speech are the words italicized in the following?—

(*a*) *Exploring* is a delightful adventure.

(*b*) The accident happened while we were *exploring* the summit.

(*c*) I got below the level of the clouds into a burst of brilliant *evening* sunshine.

(*d*) Now came still *evening* on.

(*e*) For four hours I mounted, the last two on the snow, where the *going* was easier.

(*f*) The business was sold as a *going* concern.

6. Point out the pairs of correlative words in :

(*a*) The one army was master of all the regions lying to the north, the other of the country extending southward.

(*b*) The former sent all the soldiers they had, the latter a thousand men.

(*c*) Some of the Greeks were engaged in gymnastic exercises, others in combing their long hair.

(*d*) They received the answer that either Sparta must be overthrown, or one of her kings must perish.

(*e*) Hitherto they had held their station within the wall ; now they joined battle beyond the defile.

(*f*) Roman guides know enough English to tangle everything up so that a man can make neither head nor tail of it.

(*g*) As some oaks are longer before they cast their leaves, so are some trouts, in rivers, longer before they go out of season.

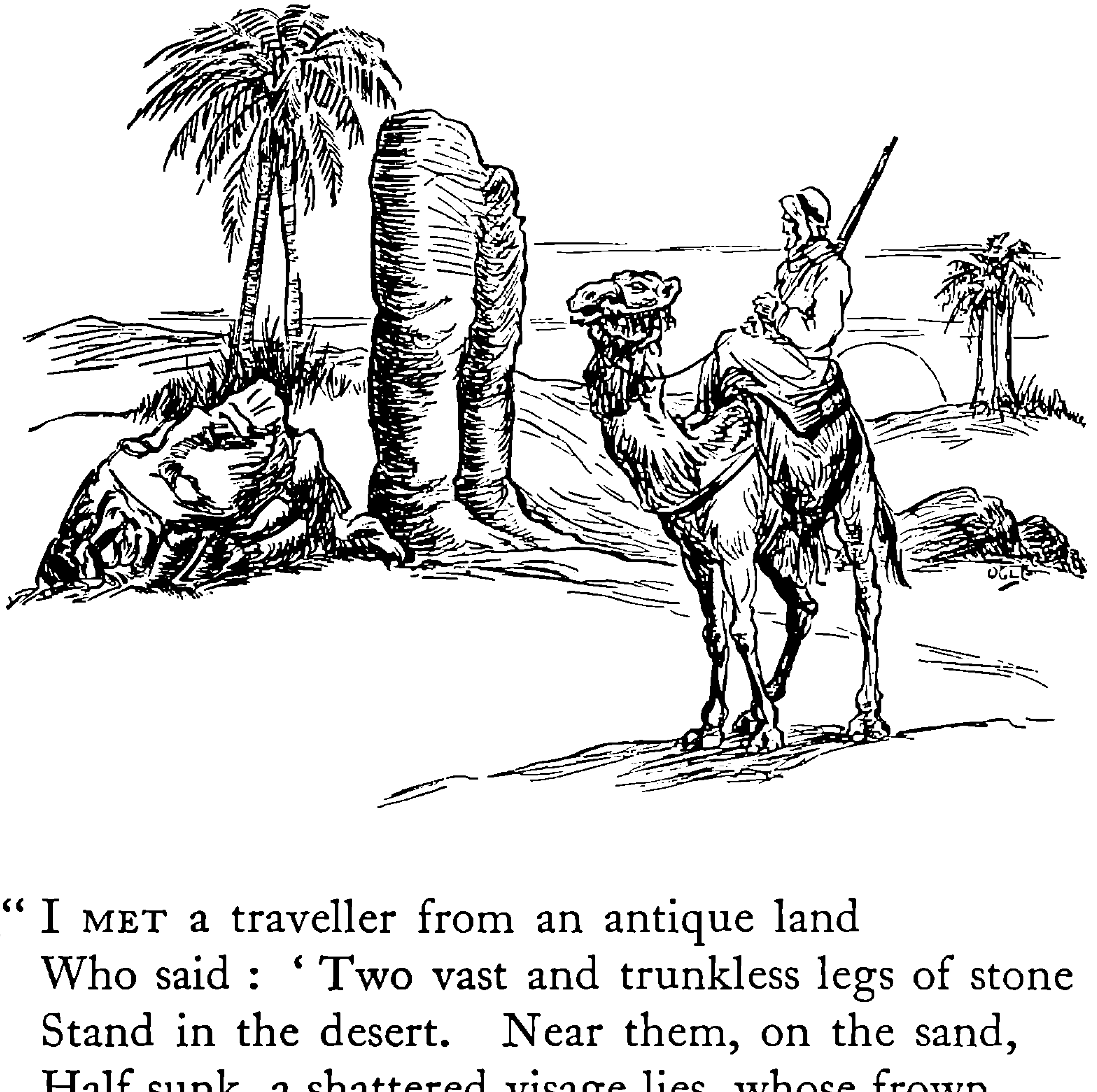
(*h*) Though the circumstances of the discovery are not so dramatic as those which attended the discovery of Neptune, yet they have an interest of their own.

(*i*) The sunlight not only touched the outer surfaces of the bushes, but passed through and lit up the branches within.

(*j*) I am told that their speech is not as bad as it was.

XLI

OZYMANDIAS



"I MET a traveller from an antique land
Who said : 'Two vast and trunkless legs of stone
Stand in the desert. Near them, on the sand,
Half sunk, a shattered visage lies, whose frown,
And wrinkled lip, and sneer of cold command,
Tell that its sculptor well those passions read,
Which yet survive, stamped on these lifeless things,
The hand that mocked them and the heart that fed.

And on the pedestal these words appear :
" My name is Ozymandias, King of Kings :
Look on my works, ye Mighty, and despair ! "
Nothing beside remains. Round the decay
Of that colossal wreck, boundless and bare,
The lone and level sands stretch far away.' "

P. B. SHELLEY.

XLII

BABYLON TO-DAY

We crossed the Nasrîyeh canal by a bridge near a ruined uhân, and five hours from Museiyib we came to the village of Mahawîl, on a canal of the same name, also bridged. There I lunched under palm-trees—there are no other trees in these regions—and so rode on, catching up the caravan and crossing many another canal, now dry, now bringing water to villages far to the east of us. It was a very barren world, scarred with the traces of former cultivation, and all the more poverty-stricken and desolate because it had once been rich and peopled : flat, too, an interminable featureless expanse from which the glory had departed. I was almost immersed in the rather jejune reflections which must assail everyone who approaches Babylon, when, as good luck would have it, I turned my eyes to the south and perceived, on the edge of the arid, sun-drenched plain, a mighty mound. There was no need to ask its name ; as certainly as if temple and fortress wall still crowned its summit, I knew it to be Bâbel, the northern mound that retains on the lips of the Arabs the echo of its ancient title. I left the road, hoping to find a direct path across the plain to that great vestige of ancient splendours, but the deep cutting of a water-course, as dry and dead as Babylon itself, barred the way. My

man climbed to the top of the high bank that edged it and we stood gazing over the site of the city. A furtive jackal crept out along the bank, caught sight of Fattûh, and fled back into the dry ditch.

"The son of retreat," said Fattûh in the speech of the people.

"Chakâl," said I, searching dimly for some familiar swell of sonorous phrases which the wind seemed to bring with it. And suddenly they rolled out over the formless thought: "The wolves howl in their palaces and the jackals in the pleasant places . . ."

Within the largest of the mounds, the Kasr, or castle, as the Arabs call it, lie the remains of Nebuchadnezzar's palace. Another eight or ten years' work will be needed to complete the ground plan of the whole structure, but enough has been done to show the nature of the house wherein the king rested. It is built of square tiles, stamped with his name and bound together with asphalt. The part which has been excavated consists of an immense irregular area enclosed by thick walls. One of these (it forms the quay of a canal) is called by the workmen "the father of twenty-two," i.e. it is twenty-two metres across: another reaches the respectable width of seventeen metres, but usually the royal builder was content with five or six metres, or even less. Within the enclosure lies a bewildering complexity of small courts and passages, with chambers leading out of them—the more bewildering because in many cases

the bricks have disappeared, and the walls must be traced by means of the spaces left behind. For more than a thousand years after the fall of Babylon no man building in its neighbourhood was at the pains to construct brick-kilns, but when he needed material he sought it in Nebuchadnezzar's city. Greek, Persian, and Arab used it as a quarry, and as you climb the stairs of the German [1] house you will become aware of the characters that spell the king's name upon the steps beneath your feet. The small courts and chambers, which were no doubt occupied by retinues of officials and servants of the palace, formed a bulwark of defence for the king. His apartments lay behind a wide paved court. From the court a doorway leads into a large oblong chamber, in the back wall of which is a niche for the throne. This is believed to be the banqueting hall where Belshazzar made his feast, and on a fragment of wall facing the throne you may see, if you please, the fingers of a man's hand writing the fatal message. How the hall was roofed is an unsolved problem. No traces of vaulting have been found, yet the width from wall to wall is so great that it is doubtful whether it could have been covered by a roof of beams. If there were indeed a vault it would be the earliest example of such construction on so big a scale. Behind the banqueting hall are the private chambers, and behind all a narrow passage leading to an emergency exit

[1] The house where the German director of excavations lived in 1911.

by means of which the king could escape to his boat on the Euphrates in the last extremity of danger.

Nebuchadnezzar's father, Nabopolassar, had built himself a smaller, but still very considerable, dwelling which occupied the western side of the mound. This Nebuchadnezzar destroyed ; he filled up the walls and chambers with rubble and masonry and laid out an extension of his own palace above it. The plan both of the upper and of the lower palace has now been ascertained. Above the Babylonian walls are the remains of Greek and Parthian settlements, each of which has to be carefully planned before it can be swept away and the lower strata studied. I saw work being carried on on a mound which formed one of the most ancient parts of the city : the excavation pits had been sunk twelve or fifteen metres deep to dwelling-houses of the first Babylonian Empire. They passed through the periods of the Parthian and of the Greek, through the age of Nebuchadnezzar and that of the Assyrians, and each stratum was levelled and planned before the next could be revealed. Add to this that the most ancient walls were constructed of sun-dried brick, scarcely distinguishable from the closely-packed earth, and some idea can be formed of the extreme difficulty of the work. The oldest Babylonian houses which have been revealed rest themselves on rubbish-heaps and ruins, but deeper digging is impossible owing to the fact that water-level has been reached. The Euphrates

channel has silted up several metres during the last six thousand years and the primeval dwellings are now below it. While we were standing at the bottom of a deep pit, a workman struck out with his pick a little heap of ornaments, a couple of copper bracelets and the beads of a necklace, which had been worn by some Babylonian woman in the third millennium before Christ and were restored at last to the light of the sun.

The northern part of the palace mound is as yet almost untouched. Here can be seen a sculptured block which used to lie among the earth-heaps till a French engineer built a pedestal for it and set it up above the ruins. It is carved in the shape of a colossal lion standing above the body of a man who lies with arms uplifted. The man's head is broken away and the whole group is only half finished, but the huge beast with the helpless human figure beneath his feet could not have been given an aspect more sinister. It is as though the workmen of the great king had fashioned an image of Destiny, treading relentlessly over the generations of mankind, before they, too, passed into its clutches. All along the east side of the palace stretches the Via Sacra, contracting at one point only its splendid width that it may pass through the gate that stands midway between the house of Nebuchadnezzar and the temple of the goddess Ishtar. The Ishtar gate—its name is attested by a cruciform inscription—is the most magnificent fragment that remains of all Nebuchad-

nezzar's constructions. Four or five times did he fill up the Via Sacra and raise its level, and each time he built up the brick towers of the double gateway to correspond. The various levels of the pavements can now be seen on the ends of the excavation trench, while the towers, completely disclosed, rear their unbroken height in stupendous masses of solid masonry. They are decorated on every side with alternate rows of bulls and dragons cut in relief on the brick: the noble strength of the bulls, stepping out firmly with arched neck, contrasts with the slender grace of the dragons, and the two companies form a bodyguard worthy of the gate of kings and of gods. Along the walls of the Via Sacra marched a procession of lions, fragments of which have been found and pieced together. They, too, were in relief, but covered with a fine enamel in which the colours were laid side by side without the intermission of cloissons. This art of enamelling has been lost, and no modern workman has been able to imitate the lion frieze. . . .

When I rode out of an afternoon one of the Zaptiehs of Babylon was detailed to accompany me. He knew the ruin-field well, having been the fortunate occupier of a post at the *Expeditions-haus* for several years. I would find him waiting in the palm-grove where my horses were stabled, alert, respectful, and less ragged than his brothers in arms whose pay does not come to them through the hands of European

THE CONQUEROR AT THE END OF HIS COURSE.

contractors. One day I asked him to take me to the Greek theatre, wondering a little whether he would understand my request.

"Effendim," he said, "you mean the place of Alexander."

The great name fell strangely among the palm-trees, and from out of the horde of ghosts that people Babylon strode the Conqueror at the end of his course. So we rode to the place of Alexander, the theatre near the city wall, ruined almost beyond recognition, but preserving in the popular nomenclature the memory of the most brilliant figure in the history of the world.

And once the clouds gathered as we were riding through the palm-groves by the river. "Praise God!" said the Zaptieh, "maybe we shall have rain." He shouted the good tidings to a peasant who drove the oxen of a water-wheel: "Oh, brother, rain, please God!" But it was dust that was heralded by the darkness, and as we hastened to the great mound of Bâbel the wind bore down upon us and the parched earth rose and enveloped us. We left our horses standing with downcast heads under the lee of the mound and picked our way up the sides between the trial trenches of the excavators. In a few moments the dust-storm swept past, and we saw the wide expanse that was Babylon, embraced by gleaming reaches of river and the circuit of mound and ditch which marks the line of the city wall.

"Effendim," said the Zaptieh, "yonder is Birs Nimrûd," and he pointed to the south-west, where, in the heart of the desert, rose the huge outline of a temple pyramid, a zigurrat. Legend has given it a notable place in the story of our first forefathers : it was believed to be no other than the impious tower that witnessed the confusion of speech.

From *Amurath to Amurath*, by GERTRUDE BELL.

EXERCISES

I. Composition Exercises

1. Which part of this description do you like best ? Why ?

2. What is the meaning of?—Jejune reflections ; sonorous phrases ; a bewildering complexity ; an emergency exit ; the Via Sacra ; in the popular nomenclature.

3. "A *colossal* lion." Use the following adjectives with appropriate nouns :

(*a*) *Bulky, massive, capacious, vast, immense, enormous, huge.*

(*b*) *Minute, diminutive, microscopic, puny, miniature, spare, scant.*

II. Grammar Exercises

4. Place the correct verbs in the following sentences :

(1) My brother, with two partners, —— this block of buildings (*own, owns*).

(2) Neither of us —— any money (*has, have*).

(3) Whenever an accident occurs, a crowd of inquisitive idlers —— (*collect, collects*).

(4) Every man —— his opportunity some time (*find, finds*).

(5) There —— Cortes, with his baggage, ammunition wagons, and guns (*was, were*).

(6) The Northern Lights —— one of the most remarkable sights that —— ever seen (*is*, *are*).

(7) John, who has hurt his foot, and is still unable to walk, although the accident happened some time ago, cried, I —— not coming with you (*am*, *is*, *are*).

(8) Neither entreaties nor the threat of death —— able to shake the martyr's resolution (*was*, *were*).

(9) Twice one —— two (*is*, *are*).

(10) The Prime Minister received a petition to which —— added the names of eight members of Parliament (*was*, *were*).

5. Look up in a dictionary the origin of the following words, and then divide them into those which are native English and those which have been borrowed from other tongues, in the latter case adding the name of the language from which each came : *are*, *he*, *be*, *they*, *animal*, *fall*, *one*, *subject*, *flight*, *minute*, *summer*, *head*, *energy*, *tyrant*, *earth*, *surface*, *ache*, *atmosphere*, *father*, *paternal*.

NOTES ON THE EXTRACTS

INTO AN UNKNOWN LAND, page 9

Samuel Butler (1835–1902) spent some years of his early life on a sheep farm in New Zealand. On his return to England he published the romance *Erewhon* in 1872. This famous book is partly a sarcastic description of the English, who are represented as living in an imaginary country (*Erewhon*, it will be observed, is "Nowhere" reversed). He wrote many other books, of which the best known is a novel, *The Way of All Flesh*, and he was also an accomplished musician and artist. This extract is from chapters 4, 5, 6: some paragraphs and sentences which, as they refer to preceding topics, would confuse the reader, besides being unnecessary for the narrative, have been omitted.

Twll Dhu, that is, "The Devil's Kitchen": a deep and narrow chasm in Carnarvonshire.

Fingal's Cave, on the island of Staffa, off the west coast of Scotland.

A DITHYRAMB ON A DOG, page 25

Mr. A. G. Gardiner, who was born in 1865, and who wrote under the pseudonym of "Alpha of the Plough," was editor of the *Daily News* from 1902 to 1919. He is known for his essays, of which *Pebbles on the Shore* and *Leaves in the Wind* are collections, and for his political character-sketches, such as *Pillars of Society* and *War Lords*.

Lord Banbury, President of the Society for the Prevention of Cruelty to Animals.

A Description of Britain, page 31

This quaint and charming description of Britain is from Dr. Sebastian Evans's translation of Geoffrey of Monmouth's Latin *History of Britain*, a book of mixed history and legend, mainly the latter, which was made in the early part of the twelfth century. The author became Bishop of St. Asaph in 1152. It is, however, much older than his time, being given by the Spanish monk Orosius in his *History of the World* (fifth century A.D.), and by Bede in his *Ecclesiastical History* (eighth century); it is also found in the chronicles of Gildas (sixth century) and of Nennius, who probably wrote at the end of the eighth century, and it is quoted by Camden in his *Annals*, written in the seventeenth century. There are slight variations in the details in all these passages.

The class should notice the effect produced by the unusual order of words, e.g. "Watered is she, moreover . . ." and the skilful choice of words in the exquisite passage which begins, "Meadows hath she, set in pleasant places." The rhythm and beauty of this piece cannot be fully appreciated until it is read aloud.

On England, page 34

from *On England and Other Addresses*, by the Right Honourable Stanley Baldwin, published in 1926, when he was Prime Minister. This is part of a speech made at the annual dinner of the Royal Society of St. George, at the Hotel Cecil, on May 6th, 1924. It should be compared with William Pitt's speech on Slavery, p. 165.

scutch = brushwood.

THE LAST POEM, page 42

Sir Cecil Spring Rice, who was born in 1859, was British Ambassador to the United States during the Great European War. In January 1918 reasons of State rendered it necessary to send out a direct representative of the Government to take his place. This poem was written shortly before his death, which occurred in February 1918.

JOHN HAMPDEN (1594–1643), page 44

was educated at Oxford and the Inner Temple, and had considerable wealth. From the beginning of Charles I's reign he opposed the King's illegal acts, resisting forced loans and shipmoney. As the sketch of his character says, his reputation and influence steadily increased while he was in Parliament. He was killed during the Civil War, at Chalgrove Field, in June 1643.

Edward Hyde, Lord Clarendon (1609–1674), the author of *The History of the Rebellion*, from which this character-sketch is taken, was a Royalist during Charles I's reign and one of Charles II's ministers. Hyde Park and the Clarendon Press are named after him.

infusions = influence, suggestions ; melancholic = serious ; carriage = behaviour.

THE DUKE OF MARLBOROUGH (1650–1722), page 49

son of Sir Winston Churchill, of Devonshire. His military and political careers are too well known for it to be necessary to give details here. The dates of his most famous victories are: Blenheim 1704, Ramillies 1706.

" throw away his entire army," i.e. at Bouhain, in 1711.

" Napoleon could throw away whole hosts," e.g. the *Grande Armée* and the army of 1815.

" the greatest statesman . . . produced." This quotation is from St. John (Bolingbroke).

This extract is from *The History of the British Army*, by Sir John Fortescue, for whom see p. 278.

GEORGE STEPHENSON (1781–1848), page 56

son of a colliery fireman. At eighteen he learned to read and write at a night school. He had great interest in machinery, and also studied hard in other directions. He invented a safety lamp for miners, and then became interested in the steam locomotive. He was the engineer of the first railway line, between Stockton and Darlington, and from this time till the end of his life was identified with railway progress.

Samuel Smiles, the author of *Self Help*, wrote *The Life of George Stephenson* in 1857.

" LET US NOW PRAISE FAMOUS MEN," page 65

These noble words are to be found in the collection of books known as " The Apocrypha." They form part of the Septuagint or Greek Old Testament, and they were included as part of the Bible until Bishop Coverdale separated them in his English Bible of 1535. In the Apocrypha there are fourteen books or portions of books. In the Greek Bible, used in the Churches of the East, of Russia, and of Greece, as well as in the Latin Vulgate and

translations made from it, these books are placed between the Old Testament and the New. This is the text of the Authorized Version of 1611.

THE BALD EAGLE, page 67

by Alexander Wilson (1766–1813). He was born at Paisley, and became a weaver. In 1794 he emigrated to America, where he was first a pedlar and then a schoolmaster, afterwards engaging in literary work. This extract is from his chief book, *The American Ornithology*, vol. II, pp. 89 on (1832 edition).

The Bald Eagle is also called the Whiteheaded Eagle, and this latter is the better name, for its head is thickly covered with feathers. It is 3 feet in length, and the spread of its wings is 7 feet from tip to tip. This bird has been adopted as the emblem of the American people. The Fish Hawk is usually called the Osprey.

Page 68, Tringae = sandpipers.

THE BLACK VULTURE, page 71

from *The Caged Eagle and Other Poems*, by George Sterling, an American poet, born in New York in 1869.

THE MOUNTAINS AND THE SEA, page 72

Oliver Wendell Holmes (1809–1894), the author of *The Autocrat of the Breakfast Table*, was an American writer.

THE DEFENCE OF ALICANTE, page 78

Alicante is on the south-east coast of Spain. This incident occurred during the War of the Spanish Succession.

Sir John Fortescue, who was born in 1859, is a military historian, and has written a monumental *History of the British Army.* This passage occurs in Book 6, chapter 9, of that work.

The Company of Korah. See Numbers, chap. xvi.

How Sleep the Brave, page 82

By William Collins (1721–1759).

The City of God, page 84

From the Book of Revelation, chap. xxi., and part of chap. xxii. This is the text of the Authorized Version.

The Heavenly City, page 88

These verses are part of an English hymn in a manuscript book in the British Museum, the hymn being signed with the initials F. P. B. Who F. P. B. was is unknown. The MS. is undated, but is of the latter part of the sixteenth or the beginning of the seventeenth century.

The Roman Guide, page 90

Mark Twain, whose real name was S. L. Clemens, was an American humorous writer ; and was born in 1835, and died in 1910. He was a river pilot on the Mississippi steamboats for some years, and then became a journalist. In 1867 he made a tour through Europe, and published an account of it called *Innocents Abroad*, from which "The Roman Guide" is taken. Besides this, his best-known

books are *Tom Sawyer* and *Huckleberry Finn.* After 1900 Mark Twain usually lived in Europe.

The Trout, page 98

The easy, natural style of this dialogue should be noticed, and the simplicity of the vocabulary. The following sentences are specially recommended as worthy of study, and because of their beauty : " (1) There I sat viewing the silver streams glide silently towards their centre, the tempestuous sea. (2) Sometimes I beguiled time by viewing the harmless lambs ; some leaping securely in the cool shade, whilst others sported themselves in the cheerful sun ; and saw others craving comfort from the swollen udders of their bleating dams."

Izaak Walton, the author of *The Compleat Angler* (1593–1683), was a London tradesman.

The two pastoral poems which follow this pastoral dialogue are of special interest. The first was written by Christopher Marlowe, the dramatist, and contemporary of Shakespeare. Marlowe belonged to a literary society which included Sir Walter Raleigh, who penned the cynical reply to the poem that is put by Walton into the mouth of the Milkmaid's mother.

The Death of Cæsar, page 110

Plutarch was born in Greece about A.D. 50. He wrote on a large number of subjects, his most famous work being his *Lives of the Noble Grecians and Romans*, which are

arranged in pairs, such as Alexander and Cæsar, for purpose of comparison. This book was translated into French, and thence by Sir Thomas North into English. North's translation was published in 1579.

Julius Cæsar (100–44 B.C.) was a Roman noble who espoused the cause of the people in the civil war which raged in Italy during his early life. He was equally an extravagant lover of pleasure, a politician, and a soldier. In 60 B.C. he became consul, and in 59 B.C. went to Gaul, the whole of which he conquered in the next nine years. In 50 B.C. he visited Britain, and again in the following year. When he returned to Italy, he found that the nobles were determined to oppose him, and another civil war ensued. He defeated his enemies, fighting battles in Greece, Africa, Syria, and Spain. When he once more returned to Rome, he held a triumph and was appointed Dictator or absolute ruler, but was murdered in the Senate House on March 15th, 44 B.C. Besides being a great conqueror, Cæsar was an accomplished speaker and writer, and was the real founder of the Roman Empire. His fame has lasted continuously down to the present day, and his names are still seen in the name of the month July, and in the words Kaiser and Czar.

"the doctrine of Epicurus." Epicurus believed that the gods did not trouble themselves with human affairs, and that it was therefore absurd to pay attention to omens, as the Greeks and Romans did.

Page 116, line 2: fact = deed.

Page 116, line 8: that = when.

MARK ANTONY'S SPEECH, page 118

from Shakespeare's *Julius Cæsar*, Act III, Sc. 2. Marcus Antonius was related to Julius Cæsar, whom he supported. In 44 B.C. he was consul with Cæsar, and supported the offer of the crown to him. He joined with Octavian and Lepidus, and with them shared the Roman world. In the end he went to Egypt, quarrelled with Octavian, was defeated in a sea battle at Actium, and killed himself.

After the assassination Brutus and Cassius were defeated at Philippi in Macedonia, and both committed suicide.

Shakespeare lived from 1564 to 1616. *Julius Cæsar* was produced about 1601. For it he used the lives of Cæsar, Brutus, and Antony in Sir Thomas North's *Lives of the Noble Grecians and Romans.*

I am beholding to you = I am indebted to you.

The Lupercal was a Roman festival.

The day he overcame the Nervii. Cæsar conquered the Nervii, a Gallic tribe, in 57 B.C.

THE VISION OF MIRZAH, page 128

This piece is No. 159 of *The Spectator*, September 1st, 1711. It is perhaps unnecessary to say that the introduction is a literary fiction, and that Addison is the sole inventor of the vision. He did not follow it up by others, as he suggested that he would do.

genius, spirit; *habit*, dress; *astonished*, thunderstruck.

harpy, an imaginary monster, with the body of a bird and a human head.

Joseph Addison (1672–1719) is still famous as an essayist, and was known in his own time as a poet also. He founded *The Tatler*, and later, with Sir Richard Steele, *The Spectator*. He is best remembered now for his creation of the old-fashioned English squire, Sir Roger de Coverley. "The Spacious Firmament," in this volume, is by him.

The Trial of Warren Hastings, page 137

This series would not be complete without the inclusion of an example of rhetorical prose. This piece appeals more strongly to the imagination and the feelings than do the two extracts from speeches found in this volume.

Lord Macaulay (1800–1859) was a lawyer, historian, essay writer, and member of Parliament. For five years he was a member of the Supreme Council of India. His best-known work is his *History of England*, which became enormously popular as soon as it appeared.

Warren Hastings (1732–1818) was governor-general of India. In 1788, on his return to England, he was impeached for cruelty and corruption. The trial dragged on till 1795, when he was acquitted.

"The just sentence on Bacon." In 1621 Lord Verulam, Viscount St. Albans, when Lord Chancellor, was found guilty of receiving bribes, fined £40,000, and sentenced to be imprisoned during the king's pleasure. Actually he was imprisoned for two days only, and in 1624 received a full pardon.

"The just absolution of Somers." Lord Somers was Lord Chancellor in 1697.

The Earl of Strafford was impeached in 1641. As the charges of treason could not be proved, a bill of attainder condemning him to death was passed, and he was beheaded, although Charles I had promised never to desert him.

Siddons, i.e. Mrs. Siddons, the great actress (1755–1831).

"The greatest painter and the greatest scholar of the age," i.e. Sir Joshua Reynolds and Dr. Samuel Parr.

Mens æqua in arduis. A soul calm and unmoved in danger and difficulty.

THE REVENGE, page 140

which was written by Sir Walter Raleigh, is included in Hakluyt's voyages. The full title is "A Report of the Truth of the Fight about the Isles of Azores, the last of August 1591, betwixt the *Revenge*, one of Her Majesty's Ships, and an Armada of the King of Spain." For Sir Walter Raleigh see series I, vol. IV, p. 203. Sir Richard Grenville was born in 1541, and was about fifty years old when he died. Sir Walter Raleigh knew Sir Richard Grenville well, as he commanded the expedition to Virginia in 1585.

Tennyson's well-known poem on the subject may be used in connexion with this piece.

The Lord Thomas Howard, i.e. Lord Howard of Effingham, the admiral in command of the English fleet during the fight with the Spanish armada.

and that safety of life was promised (page 146, line 5): here *that* = when.

Evening in Paradise, page 149

This beautiful description of the onset of evening in Paradise comes from *Paradise Lost*, Book IV, lines 598–610. Milton's dates are 1608–1684.

Sirius, page 151

From *The Story of the Heavens*, chapter 19, by Sir Robert Ball. Sir Robert Ball (1840–1913) was Astronomer Royal for Ireland. He was a well-known lecturer and writer of popular books on astronomy. *The Story of the Heavens* was published in 1886: it contains chapters on the Sun, the Moon, the Planets, the Nebulæ, and so forth, all of which are interesting to boys and girls, and easily understood by them.

The following figures may be useful to the teacher in dealing with this extract:

(1) Comparisons between the sun and the earth :

Diameter of the earth: 8,000 miles.

Diameter of the sun: 865,000 miles.

Bulk: the sun is more than a million times as large as the earth.

Weight: the sun is more than 300,000 times as heavy as the earth.

Density: the earth is more than three times as dense as the sun.

The distance from the earth to the sun is 92,700,000 miles.

(2) Comparisons between the moon and the earth :

Diameter of the moon: 2,160 miles.

Bulk: the earth is fifty times as large as the moon.

Weight: the earth is eighty times as heavy as the moon.

Density: the earth is nearly twice as dense as the moon.

The distance from the earth to the moon is 240,000 miles.

The Spacious Firmament, page 163

For Addison, see p. 282.

The third verse of this poem refers to the old belief that each of the planets as it revolved uttered a musical note, a belief which originated the phrase, "The music of the spheres."

Speech against Slavery, page 165

This is part of a speech which was delivered in the House of Commons on April 2nd, 1792, on Wilberforce's resolution "That it is the opinion of this committee that the trade carried on by British subjects, for the purpose of obtaining slaves on the coast of Africa, ought to be abolished." Pitt began his speech at four o'clock in the morning ! (*The Speeches of the Right Honourable William Pitt*, vol. II, pp. 50 on, 1806 edition.) It is a good specimen of the theatrical mode of address which was common among orators at that date, and should be contrasted with Mr. Baldwin's speech on England on p. 34.

Trading in slaves was prohibited in 1808, and slavery was abolished in the British Empire in 1833.

William Pitt (1759–1806), son of the Earl of Chatham, was Chancellor of the Exchequer at twenty-three, and Prime Minister at twenty-five. He was head of the Government during the early part of the Napoleonic Wars. It has been said of him as an orator that the best word always seemed to come spontaneously to his lips.

The Origin of Roast Pork, page 172

Charles Lamb (1775–1834) was a well-known essayist and student of Elizabethan plays. His two chief collections of essays are entitled *The Essays of Elia*, and *The Last Essays of Elia*; this extract comes from *A Dissertation upon Roast Pig*, in the former series.

John Locke (1632–1704), the celebrated English philosopher.

Amber, page 179

From chapter 20 of Sir Frederick Treves's travel book, *The Other Side of the Lantern.* Sir Frederick Treves (1853–1923) was surgeon to Edward VII. After he retired he spent a great deal of time in travelling, and wrote several accounts of his journeys, of which *The Other Side of the Lantern* is one.

The class may be led to see that the author makes the reader feel that he is amid the scenes of ruin and desolation described, and should be shown the effect produced by the short, crisp sentences, e.g. in the description of the wall.

Pirate Versus Shark, page 188

This is from *My Vagabondage*, by J. E. Patterson, a contemporary author, and purports to be a true story.

" The Bay," i.e. the Bay of Bengal.

Autumn, page 202

From *The Open Air*, by Richard Jefferies (1848–1887). He was a nature writer, other books by him being *Field and Hedgerow*, *Wood Magic*, and *Bevis*. The class should notice the appropriateness of many of the words in this piece, e.g. " *velvety* sward," and should be led to appreciate both its music and its pictorial quality.

The Procession of the Seasons, page 208

Edmund Spenser (1553–1599), the greatest Elizabethan non-dramatic poet, was Secretary to Lord Grey, Viceroy of Ireland. He was given an estate in county Cork, but his house was burnt by Irish rebels, and he had to flee to London, where he died shortly afterwards. *The Faerie Queene*, from which these verses are taken, is his chief work. As the extract shows, it contains many archaic and artificial words, but it is famous for the beauty of its descriptive passages, and for the stanza in which it is written.

The Discovery of America, page 210

The island on which Columbus landed first was one of the Bahamas, known to the natives as Guanahani. He renamed it San Salvador, by which name it is still known.

From there he went on, and found San Domingo and Cuba, before returning to Europe. He made three more voyages, discovering many more islands and reaching the mainland of Central America.

It was fortunate for him that the island was inhabited by Indians belonging to the mild and gentle Arawak race. Many of the southern and western islands of the Archipelago were peopled by Caribs, a fierce and warlike nation, from whose name the word *cannibal* comes.

William Robertson (1721–1793) was a Scottish historian, at one time Principal of Edinburgh University. The class should be led to appreciate that he has made this narrative of fact read like a tale of imaginary adventure, and to observe the easy flow of the language. The sentences are long and evenly balanced, and antithesis is frequent. The great historian Gibbon said, "The perfect composition of Dr. Robertson inflamed me to the ambitious hope that I might one day tread in his footsteps."

"There was an Indian," page 228

by Sir James Squire (born 1884), editor of *The London Mercury*.

Difference of Races, page 230

from chapter 7 of George Borrow's *Lavengro*. Borrow (1803–1881) was a student of languages and an author who led a wandering life in many countries, especially England, France, Spain, and Russia, and lived for a time among gipsies. *Lavengro*, which, with *The Romany Rye*,

tells of his adventures in gipsy life, was published in 1851. *The Bible in Spain* is another of his books that is still read.

Though the sentences in this extract are long, the meaning is quite clear, and the interest is well sustained. The use of the first person adds vividness to the narrative.

Lilly, i.e. *Lilly's Latin Grammar*, written by William Lilly (1468–1522), headmaster of St. Paul's School, for that school. It was very widely used, and was adopted at Eton in the eighteenth century.

Dorically speaking = using the language of the country.

Auld Reekie = Old Smoky, which is the natives' nickname for Edinburgh.

The Nor'loch has been drained, and is now called Princes Street Gardens; the London, Midland, & Scottish Railway runs through these gardens.

Tom Hickathrift. There is a legend that, about the time of the Norman Conquest, a Saxon labourer named Hicafric killed a giant who lived in a marsh at Tylney, in Norfolk, using a spoke and the axle of a wheel as a club.

Mr. Weller the Elder delivers some Critical Sentiments concerning Literary Composition, page 243

From chapter 32 of *The Pickwick Papers*. (For Charles Dickens, see series II, vol. II, p. 259.) *The Pickwick Papers*, which appeared in 1837, is one of his earliest works, and it was the character of Sam Weller that first made him famous.

The class should notice some of Dickens's rhetorical devices, e.g. his roundabout manner of expression, which is

paralleled in "The Origin of Roast Pork," e.g. "She carried away the poker *to preclude the possibility* of the fire being stirred" (Dickens), and "a premonitory moistening at the same time overflowed his nether lip" for "His mouth began to water" (Lamb). They should also observe some of the peculiarities of the Wellers' speech, such as their use of *w* for *v*, a feature of Cockney that has now vanished, and the amusing illustrations, such as "I'm pretty tough, as the very old turkey remarked."

cad in Dickens's time meant *groom*, and was not a term of abuse.

Valentine was originally "galantin," a gallant.

Gossamer, page 256

from *The Natural History of Selborne*, by Gilbert White, for whom see series II, vol. II, p. 262. This is Letter 23, June 8th, 1775.

Page 257, line 19 : *meteor* is here used in its original meaning, of anything suspended above the ground.

Ozymandias, page 261

by P. B. Shelley (1792–1822), one of the Romantic poets of the early nineteenth century. He belonged to a Sussex family, and went to Eton and Oxford, being expelled from the University without a degree for publishing a seditious pamphlet. He went abroad, and lived in Switzerland and Italy ; he was drowned in a storm in the Bay of Spezia, when he was thirty years old.

Shelley is perhaps the greatest of English lyric poets, to whom it is impossible to do any kind of justice in a short note such as this. *The Cloud*, *Arethusa*, *Ode to the West Wind*, *The Skylark*, are four of the best known of his short poems; *The Revolt of Islam* is the chief of his long poems; *Adonais* is a poetical lament for Keats; *The Cenci* is a verse-tragedy.

Professor C. H. Herford wrote:

"For Wordsworth, Shelley, Keats, and Coleridge, Nature is an inexhaustible source and provocative of lovely imaginings. Wordsworth conveys the loneliness of the mountains, Shelley the tameless energies of the wind, Keats the embalmed darkness of verdurous glooms and winding mossy ways, with an intensity which makes all other Nature poetry seem pale."

BABYLON TO-DAY, page 263

from Gertrude Bell, *Amurath to Amurath*, pp. 167 on. Gertrude Bell was born in 1868, and died in 1926. She went to Persia in 1892, and acquired a thorough knowledge of the East, learning Asiatic languages and travelling. During the War she assisted Colonel Lawrence to stir up the Arabs to revolt against the Turks, and was later Assistant Political Officer at Baghdad. She has been called "The Uncrowned Queen of Arabia," and by the Arabs themselves was known as "Mother of the Faithful," a title given to Ayesha, the wife of Mahomet. *Amurath to Amurath* was published in 1907. *Amurath* means "Sul-

tan": there have been five Sultans of Turkey with that name.

Babylon, which became the capital of Babylonia in 2500 B.C., is mentioned on a tablet as far back as 3800 B.C. From 2500 to 734 B.C. was Babylon's period of magnificence, but in the latter year the Assyrians conquered it under Tiglath-Pileser. After 625 the city again became powerful under Nebuchadnezzar, and was rebuilt by him. Cyrus the Great, King of the Persians, captured it in 538 B.C. The next conqueror was Alexander the Great (330 B.C.), who attempted to restore it. From that time it fell into ruin, and the sands of the desert slowly covered it. To-day it is a series of shapeless mounds, which archæologists are gradually excavating.

For the sake of comparison, the description given by Herodotus, who visited it not long after the later period of its magnificence, has been inserted here. (Book I, chapters 178–181.)

"Assyria possesses a vast number of great cities, whereof the most renowned and strongest at this time was Babylon, whither, after the fall of Nineveh, the seat of government had been removed. The following is a description of the place:

"The city stands on a broad plain, and is an exact square, a hundred and twenty furlongs in length each way, so that the entire circuit is four hundred and eighty furlongs. While such is its size, in magnificence there is no other city that approaches to it. It is surrounded, in the first place, by a broad and deep moat, full of water, behind which rises

a wall fifty royal cubits in width, and two hundred in height.[1] (The royal cubit is longer by three fingers' breadth than the common cubit.)

"And here I must not omit to tell the use to which the mould dug out of the great moat was turned, nor the manner wherein the wall was wrought. As fast as they dug the moat the soil which they got from the cutting was made into bricks, and when a sufficient number were completed they baked the bricks in kilns. Then they set to building, and began with bricking the borders of the moat, after which they proceeded to construct the wall itself, using throughout for their cement hot bitumen, and interposing a layer of wattled reeds at every thirtieth course of the brick. On the top, along the edge of the wall, they constructed buildings of a single chamber, facing one another, leaving between them room for a four-horse chariot to turn. In the circuit of the wall are a hundred gates, all of brass, with brazen lintels and side-posts. The bitumen used in the work was brought to Babylon from the Is, a small stream which flows into the Euphrates at the point where the city of the same name stands, eight days' journey from Babylon. Lumps of bitumen are found in great abundance in this river.

"The city is divided into two portions by the river which runs in the midst of it. The river is the Euphrates, a broad, deep, swift stream, which rises in Armenia and empties itself into the Erythræan Sea. The city wall is brought down on both sides to the edge of the stream:

[1] Nearly 400 feet.

thence, from the corners of the wall, there is carried along each bank of the river a fence of burnt bricks. The houses are mostly three and four stories high: the streets all run in straight lines, not only those parallel to the river, but also the cross streets which lead down to the water-side. At the river end of these cross streets are low gates in the fence that skirts the stream, which are, like the great gates in the outer wall, of brass, and open on the water.

"The outer wall is the main defence of the city. There is, however, a second inner wall, of less thickness than the first, but very little inferior to it in strength. The centre of each division of the town was occupied by a fortress. In the one stood the palace of the kings, surrounded by a wall of great strength and size; in the other was the sacred precinct of the god Bel, a square enclosure two furlongs each way, with gates of solid brass; which was also remaining in my time. In the middle of the precinct there was a tower of solid masonry, a furlong in length and height, upon which was raised a second tower, and on that a third, and so on up to eight. The ascent to the top is on the outside, by a path which winds round all the towers. When one is about half-way up, one finds a resting-place and seats, where persons are wont to sit some time on their way to the summit. On the topmost tower there is a spacious temple.

"Below, in the same precinct, there is a second temple, in which is a sitting figure of Bel, all of gold. Before the figure stands a large golden table, and the throne whereon it sits, and the base on which the throne is placed, are likewise of gold. The Chaldæans told me that all the gold together

was eight hundred talents' weight. Outside the temple are two altars, one of solid gold, on which it is only lawful to offer sucklings; the other a common altar, but of great size, on which the full-grown animals are sacrificed. It is also on the great altar that the Chaldæans burn the frankincense, which is offered to the amount of a thousand talents' weight every year, at the festival of the god. In the time of Cyrus there was likewise in this temple a figure of a man, twelve cubits high, entirely of solid gold. I myself did not see the figure, but I relate what the Chaldæans report concerning it. . . .

"But little rain falls in Assyria—enough, however, to make the corn begin to sprout, after which the plant is nourished and the ears formed by means of irrigation from the river. For the river does not, as in Egypt, overflow the corn-lands of its own accord, but is spread over them by the hand, or by the help of engines. The whole of Babylonia is, like Egypt, intersected with canals. Of all the countries that we know there is none which is so fruitful in grain."

Mr. E. H. Blakeney says:

"For nearly 2,000 years Babylon was the centre of the world's civilization. Her script and her language were known in Egypt, and on the shores of the Mediterranean, and were the universal medium of communication between educated men. She was the bank and emporium of the East; and in the age of her splendour, with her daughter states about her, dominated the thoughts of mankind. What Rome has been, and London is, that Babylon was—

"the glory of kingdoms, the beauty of the Chaldæans' pride" (Isaiah xiii. 7). Her ruins are still wonderful; but she has left us spiritual ruins too, and these are yet more strange. The debt of ancient Israel to Babylon was immense. The code of Khammurabi (*circa* 2200 B.C.) may well have influenced the Mosaic code: the angelology of the later Jewish scriptures was Babylonian in origin; the legends of the Creation, the Fall, and the Deluge, are of Babylonian ancestry. Little wonder if, when the end came, and she fell, a cry went through the earth that had once feared her power, her pride, her universal empire—"Babylon is fallen, is fallen!'" (Isaiah xxi. 9).

"The wolves howl in their palaces, and the jackals in their pleasant places." This is a reminiscence, but not an exact quotation of Isaiah xiii. 22 (Revised Version).

Belshazzar the Chaldean, King of Babylon. Cyrus the Great stormed the city, at night time during a festival, in 538 B.C., and slew Belshazzar. The story is told in the Bible, Daniel, chap. v.

INDEX OF THE COMPOSITION AND GRAMMATICAL EXERCISES IN THE PUPIL'S BOOK

For convenience of reference the exercises are classified here, questions on subject-matter being omitted. The arabic figures refer to the pages, and those in italics are the numbers of the questions on the page referred to.

Active voice, 136, *5*
Adjectives, 33, *5*, *6* ; 117, *5*
Adjective phrases, 77, *6* ; 81, *4* ; 117, *6* ; 187, *6*
Adverbs, 24, *4*, *5*
Adverb phrases, 48, *7* ; 64, *7* ; 77, *6* ; 81, *4* ; 187, *6*
Allegory, 77, *2* ; 135, *1*
Analysis into subject and predicate, 70, *4*
Antecedents of the relative, 97, *5* ; 171, *8*
Antithesis, 161, *1* ; 206, *1*
As, 178, *7*
Auxiliary verbs, 104, *3* ; 105, *4*
Case, 227, *5*
Clauses equivalent to phrases, 148, *5* ; 206, *5*
Climax, 126, *1*
Colour words, 206, *2*
Combination of sentences, 242, *7*
Comparisons, 186, *3*
Comparison, degrees of, 41, *5*
Composition, 81, *1* ; 96, *1* ; 135, *4* ; 171, *6* ; 178, *3*, *4* ; 226, *4*
Compounds, 255, *7*
Compound verbs, 33, *2* ; 201, *7*
Concord of subject and verb, 271, *4*
Conditional clauses, 242, *6*

Conjunctions, 178, *6*
Correlatives, 178, *5* ; 260, *6*
Definitions, 81, *3* ; 255, *7*
Direct speech, 116, *3*
Do, 105, *5*
-*ed* words, 162, *6*
Emphasis, 41, *3* ; 170, *2* ; 226, *3*
Enlargement of subject, 81, *3* ; 186, *5*
„ „ object, 186, *5*
Epithets, 271, *3*
Figurative use of words, 47, *2* ; 81, *4*
Hyphens, 259, *4*
Idioms, 64, *5*
Indirect speech, 116, *3*
-*ing* words, 162, *6* ; 260, *5*
Interrogative sentences, 259, *3*
Inversion, 70, *2*
Meaning of words, 47, *1* ; 70, *3* ; 135, *2* ; 161, *2*, *3* ; 226, *1* ; 241, *2* ; 259, *2*
Metaphors, 41, *2* ; 63, *3* ; 70, *2* ; 87, *1*, *2* ; 96, *2* ; 171, *7* ; 254, *5*
-*n* words, 162, *6*
Negative words, 41, *4* ; 226, *3*
Noun phrases, 77, *6* ; 81, *4* ; 187, *6*
Nouns, concrete and abstract, 41, *7* ; 55, *5*
„ proper and common, 55, *4*
Order of words, 117, *5* ; 126, *1*
Origin of words, 272, *5*
Parables, 77, *1*, *2*, *3*
Participles, 33, *4* ; 41, *6* ; 70, *5* ; 162, *6*
Passive voice, 136, *5*

Personal pronouns, 127, *2*
Phrases, 116, *1* ; 186, *2* ; 200, *1*
Phrases equivalent to clauses, 227, *6*
Phrase meaning, 148, *5* ; 162, *5* ; 200, *2* ; 271, *2*
Phrase use, 24, *3* ; 47, *3* ; 55, *3* ; 148, *2* ; 170, *3* ; 178, *2* ; 241, *3* ; 254, *3* ; 259, *1*
Précis, 170, *1* ; 201, *4*
Prefixes, 81, *5* ; 206, *4*
Principal verbs, 105, *4*
Punctuation, 23, *1*
Redundant words, 117, *5* ; 147, *1*
Reflexive pronouns, 255, *8*
Relative pronouns, 178, *6* ; 187, *7* ; 207, *6*
Rhetorical questions, 126, *1*
Sentence-making, 24, *3*, *6* ; 33, *2* ; 41, *7* ; 47, *3* ; 55, *3* ; 64, *4*, *5* ; 70, *5* ; 77, *5* ; 81, *4* ; 116, *2* ; 148, *4*, *5* ; 161, *1* ; 170, *3* ; 206, *1* ; 241, *3* ; 242, *6* ; 254, *3* ; 259, *1*
Sentence-structure, 55, *3* ; 242, *6*
Similes, 70, *2*
Slang, 206, *3*
Style, 104, *2* ; 186, *2* ; 201, *3* ; 271, *1*
Subordinate clauses, 48, *4* ; 127, *3* ; 207, *7*
Suffixes, 77, *4* ; 81, *5* ; 206, *4* ; 227, *7*
Synonyms, 70, *1* ; 81, *2* ; 171, *5* ; 241, *4*, *5* ; 255, *6*
Telegrams, 33, *3*
Tense, 41, *6* ; 201, *6*
Transitive verbs, 97, *4* ; 136, *6*
Translation, 33, *1* ; 135, *3* ; 148, *3* ; 170, *4* ; 178, *2* ; 254, *4*
Variation of function, 24, *6* ; 64, *6* ; 77, *5* ; 96, *3* ; 201, *5*

Vocabulary, 24, *2* ; 186, *4*
Word-structure, 48, *5*, *6* ; 77, *4* ; 81, *5* ; 206, *4* ; 227, *7*
Word-use, 64, *4* ; 116, *2* ; 148, *4*

MESTON TRAINING COLLEGE
10026
800
MADRAS-14